

TRAVELS

PETERSBURG

37

RUSSIA

TO THE

ASIA

JOHN BELL

VOLUME II

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I
The journey from St. Petersburg
to Moscow, and the return
to St. Petersburg, by the
great Northern Road, in the
year 1812.

CHAPTER II
The journey from Moscow
to the Caucasus, and the
return to Moscow, by the
great Southern Road, in the
year 1812.

APPENDIX
I. A list of the names of the
officers and men who accompanied
the author on his journey.
II. A list of the names of the
officers and men who accompanied
the author on his journey.

27

J. J. Molesworth Penman
T R A V E L S *Comwall*

FROM

ST. P E T E R S B U R G

IN

37

R U S S I A,

TO

D I V E R S E P A R T S

OF

A S I A.

BY

J O H N B E L L,

OF ANTERMONY.

V O L U M E II.

C O N T A I N I N G

The continuation of the journey between Mosco and PEKIN. To which is added, a translation of the Journal of Mr. de LANGE, resident of RUSSIA at the court of PEKIN, in the years 1721 & 1722.

A journey from MOSCO to DERBENT in PERSIA, in the year 1722.

A journey from ST. PETERSBURG to CONSTANTINOPLE, in the years 1737 and 1738.

G L A S G O W:

PRINTED FOR THE AUTHOR BY ROBERT AND ANDREW FOULIS

PRINTERS TO THE UNIVERSITY

M.DCC.LXIII.

Sold by R. & A. FOULIS, and A. STALKER at GLASGOW; KINCAID & BELL at EDINBURGH; A. MILLER, J. NOURSE, T. BECKET & P. A de HONDT, and C. HENDERSON in LONDON; J. LEAKE, and J. FREDERICK at BATH; and T. CADELL at BRISTOL.



J O U R N E Y

FROM

ST. P E T E R S B U R G

TO

P E K I N.

CHAP. IX.

1720.



C H A P T E R IX.

Occurrences at PEKIN, audience of the ambaffador, &c.

THE 19th, the prime minifter, accompanied with the mafter of the ceremonies and five JESUITS, came to compliment the ambaffador. As foon as they entered the gate, two of their attendants walked before them, at fome diftance, making a humming noife; the ufual fign that fome perfon of diftinction is coming. ALOY defired the ambaffador would give him a copy of his credentials; which was not eafily complied with, till thefe minifters abfolutely infifted on it; alledging that the Emperor never received any letters from his beft friends, among whom he reckoned his Czarih Majefty the chief, without knowing the contents. The LATIN copy was at laft

CHAP. IX. produced, the original being in the RUSSIAN language;
1720. and the master of the ceremonies and the missionaries
having translated it into CHINESE, took their leave. But
the aleggada remained for the space of three hours,
talking on different subjects. This minister, it seems,
was a great sportsman. He asked to see the ambassa-
dor's dogs, which were a few grey-hounds, and some
FRENCH buck-hounds. He was desired to receive,
in a present, any of them which pleased him best; but
he would accept only of a couple of grey-hounds.

In the mean time, the Emperor sent an officer to
enquire after the ambassador's health; who brought
along with him a table, carried by four men, and co-
vered with yellow silk, on which was placed variety of
fruits and confections; and, in the middle, a large
piece of excellent mutton. The officer acquainted
the ambassador that these provisions were brought
from the Emperor's own table; and therefore hoped he
would eat of them. This circumstance was accounted
a singular mark of the Emperor's favour.

The day following, the ambassador had a visit from
the president of the council for western affairs, called
Affchinoma, accompanied by four missionaries, two of
which were messieurs PARANIM and FRIDELII. The
con-

conversation turned chiefly on the ceremonial of the ambassador's introduction to the Emperor, which was a matter not easily settled. The principal points, insisted on by the ambassador, were, that he might deliver his credentials into the Emperor's own hands, and be excused from bowing thrice three times on entering his Majesty's presence; to which custom all must submit who appear before the Emperor. The president, on the contrary, asserted, that the constant practice in CHINA, for many ages past, was directly opposite to these demands; that their Emperors never received letters of credence with their own hands; that the custom was for the ambassador to lay them on a table, at some distance from the throne, or the place where the Emperor may happen to sit; after which they were delivered to the Emperor by the officer appointed for that purpose.

At the same time, the president invited the ambassador to an entertainment, to be given at a palace in the city, where, he said, the Emperor would be present, and speak with him. His excellency replied, he would accept of the invitation, provided he might, on that occasion, deliver the Czar his master's letter. He was told this was neither a proper place nor time

CHAP. IX. for that purpose; but that the Emperor intended to
 1720. give him a publick audience very soon, and receive his
 credentials in form.

The ambassador was apprehensive, that, the Emperor having already seen a copy of his credentials, should he also see himself at the entertainment, his publick audience might thereby be retarded; and therefore declined the invitation. It appeared, however, afterwards, that this suspicion was without foundation; and that the Emperor intended nothing more than to do honour to the ambassador.

The 21st, the aleggada paid a second visit. His servants brought tea ready-made, some jars of arrack, with fruits and confections. From this day little material happened, except daily messages from court relating to the ceremonial, till the 27th; when this affair was, at last, adjusted on the following terms. “ That the
 “ ambassador should comply with the established cus-
 “ toms of the court of CHINA; and, when the Empe-
 “ ror sent a minister to RUSSIA, he should have in-
 “ structions to conform himself, in every respect, to
 “ the ceremonies in use at that court.” This affair gave the ministry at PEKIN much trouble; and, I must
 confess,

confess, the missionaries took great pains to soften matters on both sides. CHAP. IX.
1720.

On the 28th, the day appointed for the ambassador's publick audience of the Emperor, horses were brought to our lodgings for the ambassador and his retinue; the Emperor being then at a country house, called TZAN-SHU-YANG, about six miles westward from PEKIN. We mounted at eight in the morning, and about ten arrived at court; where we alighted, at the gate, which was guarded by a strong party of soldiers. The commanding officers conducted us into a large room, where we drank tea, and staid about half an hour till the Emperor was ready to receive us. We then entered a spacious court, enclosed with high brick-walls, and regularly planted with several rows of forest-trees, about eight inches diameter, which I took to be limes. The walks are spread with small gravel; and the great walk is terminated by the hall of audience, behind which are the Emperor's private apartments. On each side of the great walk are fine flower-plots and canals. As we advanced, we found all the ministers of state, and officers belonging to the court, seated upon fur-cushions, cross-legged, before the hall, in the open air; among these, places were appointed

CHAP. IX. appointed for the ambassador and his retinue; and in
1720. this situation we remained, in a cold frosty morning,
 till the Emperor came into the hall. During this interval, there were only two or three servants in the hall, and not the least noise was heard from any quarter. The entry to the hall is by seven marble steps, the whole length of the building. The floor is finely paved with a neat checker-work of white and black marble. The edifice is quite open to the south; and the roof supported by a row of handsome wooden pillars, octangular, and finely polished; before which is hung a large canvass, as a shelter from the heat of the sun, or inclemencies of the weather.

After we had waited about a quarter of an hour, the Emperor entered the hall at a back-door, and seated himself upon the throne; upon which all the company stood. The master of the ceremonies now desired the ambassador, who was at some distance from the rest, to walk into the hall; and conducted him by one hand, while he held his credentials in the other. Having ascended the steps, the letter was laid on a table placed for that purpose, as had been previously agreed; but the Emperor beckoned to the ambassador, and directed him to approach; which he no sooner perceived,

perceived, than he took up the credentials, and, attended by ALOY, walked up to the throne, and, kneeling, laid them before the Emperor; who touched them with his hand, and inquired after his Czarish Majesty's health. He then told the ambassador, that the love and friendship he entertained for his majesty were such, that he had even dispensed with an established custom of the empire in receiving his letter.

CHAP. IX.

1720.

During this part of the ceremony, which was not long, the retinue continued standing without the hall; and we imagined, the letter being delivered, all was over. But the master of the ceremonies brought back the ambassador; and then ordered all the company to kneel, and make obeisance nine times to the Emperor. At every third time we stood up, and kneeled again. Great pains were taken to avoid this piece of homage, but without success. The master of the ceremonies stood by, and delivered his orders in the TARTAR language, by pronouncing the words *morgu* and *boss*; the first meaning to bow, and the other to stand; two words which I cannot soon forget.

This piece of formality being ended, the master of the ceremonies conducted the ambassador, and the six gentlemen of the retinue, with one interpreter, into the

CHAP. IX. the hall. Our clerks, inferior officers, and servants, ^{1720.} remained still without; together with many courtiers and officers of distinction. We were seated on our own cushions, in a row upon the floor, to the right of the throne, about six yards distance. And immediately behind us sat three missionaries, dressed in CHINESE habits, who constantly attend the court. On this occasion, they served, by turns, as interpreters.

Soon after we were admitted, the Emperor called the ambassador to him, took him by the hand, and talked very familiarly on various subjects. Among other things, he told him, that, he was informed his Czarish Majesty exposed his person to many dangers, particularly by water; at which he was much surprised; but desired he would take the advice of an old man; and not hazard his life, by committing himself to the rage of the merciless waves and winds, where no valour could avail. We were near enough to hear this piece of friendly and wholesome advice.

This conversation being finished, the Emperor gave the ambassador, with his own hand, a gold cup full of warm tarassun; a sweet fermented liquor, made of various sorts of grain, as pure and strong as CANARY wine, of a disagreeable smell, though not unpleasant to
the

the taste. This cup was brought about to the gentle- CHAP. IX.
men; and all of us drank the Emperor's health; who ob- 1720.
served, that this liquor would warm us that cold morn-
ing. His Majesty also found many faults with our
drefs, as improper for a cold climate; and, I must con-
fess, I thought him in the right.

On the left side of the throne sat five Princes, sons
to the Emperor; together with all the ministers and
grandees of the court. The tarassun, however, was
handed about to none but ourselves, and the JESUITS
behind us. Eight or ten of the Emperor's grandsons
now entered the hall. They were very handsome, and
plainly dressed; having nothing to distinguish them,
but the dragon with five claws, woven into their out-
er garments, and a yellow tunic of sattin, bearing the
same device, with little caps on their heads faced with
sable. After them came the musicians carrying their
instruments. By this time the hall was pretty full;
and, what is surprising, there was not the least noise,
hurry, or confusion. Every one perfectly knows his
own business; and the thick paper soles of the CHINESE
boots prevent any noise from their walking on the
floor. By these means every thing goes on with great
regularity; but at the same time with wonderful quick-

CHAP. IX. nefs. In short, the characteristic of the court of PE-
1720, KIN is order and decency, rather than grandeur and
magnificence.

The Emperor sat cross-legged on his throne. He was dressed in a short loose coat of sable, having the fur outward, lined with lamb-skin; under which he wore a long tunic of yellow silk, interwoven with figures of golden dragons with five claws; which device no person is allowed to bear except the imperial family. On his head was a little round cap, faced with black fox skin; on the top of which I observed a large beautiful pearl in the shape of a pear, which, together with a tassel of red-silk tied below the pearl, was all the ornament I saw about this mighty monarch. The throne also was very simple, being made of wood; but of neat workmanship. It is raised five easy steps from the floor, is open towards the company; but has a large japanned screen on each side to defend it from the wind.

The master of the ceremonies, and a few officers of the household, were dressed in robes of state, of gold and silver stuffs, with monstrous dragons on their backs and breasts. Most of the ministers of state were dressed very plain, having nothing like ornaments about them

them; a few only had large rubies, sapphires, and emeralds. These precious stones are cut into the shape of pears, through which a hole is drilled, to fix them on the top of their bonnets. These holes diminish the value of the stones, one half at least, at an EUROPEAN market. I once saw, however, one of these rubies, with a hole drilled through it, which was bought at PEKIN for a trifle, valued at ten thousand pounds Sterling in EUROPE. But such bargains are rarely to be met with; this being a stone of the first class, for bigness and purity. As for diamonds, the CHINESE, it seems, do not much esteem them; for few diamonds are found in CHINA, and these very rudely cut and shaped; and so, indeed, are all their coloured stones.

It was now about noon; at which time our entertainment began to be served up; (of which I shall also give some account.) There were first brought neat little tables, covered with variety of fruits and confections, and placed before all the company. It seems to be the fashion in this country to bring the desert first; at least that was the case at all the entertainments where I was present. In this, as in many other things, the behaviour of the CHINESE is quite contrary to that of the EUROPEANS. Soon after the

CHAP. IX. fruits, the victuals were served in the same manner, ^{1720.} and placed on small tables before the guests. They consisted of fowls, mutton, and pork, all very good of their kinds; and the whole was either boiled, or stewed with pickles; but nothing roasted. The Emperor sent several dishes from his own table to the ambassador, particularly some boiled pheasants; which were very agreeable.

The musick played all the time of dinner. The chief instruments were flutes, harps, and lutes, all tuned to the CHINESE taste. There was also some vocal musick; an old TARTAR, in particular, sung a warlike song, to which he beat time, by striking, with two ivory rods, upon a chime of little bells that hung before him. A young TARTAR sung a call to war, dancing at the same time, and keeping time by drawing the head of an arrow a-cross his shield. Then entered two little girls, who danced and sung while the instruments played. After them came tumblers, who performed various feats of activity, in the court before the hall. These were succeeded by wrestlers, fencers, and other performers of the same species. The Emperor sent frequently to the ambassador, to ask how he liked the musick, dancing, and other entertain-

tertainments. He also inquired about several princes and states of EUROPE, with whose power, by sea and land, he was not unacquainted. But, above all, he wondered how the kingdom of SWEDEN could hold out so long against so great a power as that of RUSSIA. After this conversation, the Emperor informed the ambassador that he would soon send for him again; but, as the night was cold, he would detain him no longer at present; and immediately slept from his throne, and returned to his private apartments by the same passage he left them. We also mounted, and repaired to our lodgings in the city, so well satisfied with the gracious and friendly reception of the Emperor, that all our former hardships were almost forgot.

The 29th, the Mandarin TULISHIN came to our lodgings, with two clerks, and took a list of the presents, sent by the Czar to the Emperor. These consisted of various rich furs, clocks, repeating watches set in diamonds, mirrors; and the battle of POLTAVA, nicely turned in ivory, done by his Czarish Majesty's own hands, and set in a curious frame. The ambassador, at the same time, delivered to the Mandarin, as a present from himself to the Emperor, several toys
of

CHAP. IX. of value, a fine managed horse, some grey-hounds, and
1720. large buck-hounds.

Every thing was entered in a book, very exactly, even the names and qualities of each particular dog. There was also tied about the neck of each dog, a yellow silk-cord, drawn through a hole in a little bit of wood, which hung from the dogs neck, as a mark of its belonging to the court. The CHINESE, in general, are very fond of little harlequin dogs that play monkey tricks. A servant of ours had one of that kind, which he sold for an hundred ounces of silver.

The same day, all the fruits and confections of the entertainment given at the audience, which remained, were sent to the ambassador's lodgings. They were carried in great state through the streets, covered with yellow silk; and an officer of the court walked before the procession.

Next day, the Emperor sent to our lodgings several large dishes of massive gold, containing a kind of delicate fish, called mu, already dressed; but in such a manner that I did not know to what to compare it. Also some bowls filled with excellent vermicelli; and a sort of pastry-puffs, baked over the steam of boiling water, exceeding, in whiteness, any thing of that kind

I ever saw. All these things were sent from his Majesty's own table; an honour which he grants but seldom. It seems he was resolved we should have provisions in abundance; for, besides all these, we received our daily allowance, in which we were by no means stinted.

CHAP. IX.
1720.

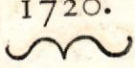
After dinner, the master of the ceremonies, accompanied with the captain of the eunuchs, and three Jesuits, came to visit the ambassador. This eunuch was a great favourite of the Emperor, on account of the knowledge he had acquired in mathematics and mechanics. He made the ambassador a present of a small enamelled gold watch, and a wind-gun, both of his own making. The Emperor himself is a great lover of the arts, so far, that, whoever distinguishes himself, in any useful branch of them, is sure to meet with proper encouragement. The eunuch also made a present, to the ambassador, of a steel to strike fire; and then desired to see the presents; which was granted. At taking leave, ALOY told the ambassador, that the Emperor intended to give him a CHINESE dress, which was more convenient and warmer than the EUROPEAN.

December the first, MERIN-SANGUIN, a general officer.

CHAP. IX. cer, and brother to the first minister of state, came to
1720. visit the ambassador. Notwithstanding the high rank
of this military gentleman, he had no sword about
him; for, at PEKIN, no person, not even officers and soldiers, except when on duty, wears a sword, or any other weapon, in the city.

The day following, the ambassador had a second audience of the Emperor, at the same palace. On this occasion the Czar's presents were carried to court, by a number of people sent for that purpose. The Emperor viewed them all at a distance; after which they were delivered to an officer appointed by his majesty to receive them. This audience was held in a private hall within the inner-court, where only the officers of the household, and the gentlemen of the retinue, were present. We were entertained in the same manner as before. The Emperor conversed very familiarly with the ambassador, on various subjects; and talked of peace and war, in particular, in the style of a philosopher. In the evening, we returned to the city, in a cold north wind, which blew the dust about in clouds. Scarcely had we arrived, when the fruits and confections, according to custom, were sent to our lodgings.

The

This evening, one of the Emperor's grandsons came CHAP. IX. to visit the ambassador. He was a genteel youth, a-^{1720.} bout fourteen years of age, and had not above half a dozen of attendants.

Next day, the weather continued cold and frosty. The sky was clear, and a strong wind at north-west, blowing the dust about. I observed that the north-west winds are the coldest in this place; as they come over the vast tracts of ice and snow in SIBERIA.

The 4th, there was a fall of snow, to the deepness of seven or eight inches; which was immediately thrown into heaps, and the streets clean swept. This day the missionaries sent a present to the ambassador, consisting of several sorts of venison, and wild-fowl, and a greater variety of fine fruits, and confections, than I ever saw in any country; together with a couple of jars of wine made by themselves. Among the fruits there were some species which I had never before seen; particularly a sort of apple, about the size of a common orange, with a smooth skin of a yellowish colour, very soft and sweet, or rather luscious; also a fruit about the bigness of a walnut, but quite round, resembling in taste a prune, but far more delicious; it contains a smooth hard stone; and the whole is covered

VOL. II. C with

CHAP. IX. with a thin brownish shell, so brittle that it is easily
1720. broken between the finger and thumb. Some of these
shells are rough, and others smooth. They serve to prevent the tender fruit from being devoured by birds, and from flying dust; and, what is something uncommon, the fruit does not adhere to the shell, but a small vacuity is left between them. It is not only pleasant to the taste, but is accounted very wholesome.

The 5th, the ambassador had a third audience of the Emperor, in the palace at PEKIN. As some affairs relating to the two empires were to be discussed, the secretary only, M. de LANGE, accompanied the ambassador. After he was introduced, the Emperor told him, he had given orders to the tribunal for western affairs to hear the subject of his commission; and then retired to his own apartments, leaving his ministers to transact the business; which was soon finished on this occasion; and the ambassador returned to his lodgings.

The 6th, being ST. NICOLAS' day, a great festival in the GREEK church, the ambassador went to the RUSSIAN chapel in PEKIN to hear divine service. This house stands within the city, under the east wall; and was built, by the bounty of the present Emperor KAMHI, on the following occasion.

About

About the year 1688, there happened a difference CHAP. IX.
betwixt the government of SIBERIA and the CHINESE, 1720.
about a small fort, called ALBAZIN, which the RUSSI-
ANS had built upon the banks of the river AMOOR.
The CHINESE alledged the fort was erected on their
territories; and, jealous of the approach of such power-
ful neighbours, made several fruitless representations
to the governor of SIBERIA to have it demolished.
The Emperor, at last, impatient of longer delay, sent
an army of above one hundred thousand men, to do by
force what could not be accomplished by negotiation.
They invested the place on all sides, and raised batte-
ries against it. After a vigorous defence, the garri-
son, consisting of about three or four hundred COS-
SACKS, was obliged to surrender for want of provisi-
ons. No terms could be obtained; and all the RUS-
SIANS were made prisoners of war. In consequence
of which they were carried to PEKIN, where the Empe-
ror generously assigned them houses apart from the
rest of the inhabitants, permitted the free exercise of
their religion, and gave them a daily allowance equal
with his own soldiers. By this mild treatment they
were enabled to build the little chapel, which they still
possess. The descendents of these prisoners are pret-

CHAP. IX. ty numerous, and useful to their countrymen the
1720. RUSSIANS as interpreters. I formerly mentioned that
these disputes were ended on the following terms; the
prisoners on both sides were to remain unexchanged,
and the fort of ALBAZIN to be destroyed; since
which time the two empires have continued in good
correspondence. The inhabitants of SIBERIA, indeed,
regret much the loss of their fort; as it stood in a fine
climate, gave them possession of a large extent of
country northward from the AMOOR; and, besides, opened
a passage down that river to the JAPANESE ocean.
It was, however, the occasion of establishing the
GREEK church in CHINA; which still continues to flourish,
though its members are not very numerous. As
one priest dies, another from SIBERIA succeeds him;
who minds chiefly his own small flock, and thinks
very little of making converts. This circumstance
prevents their being obnoxious to the ROMAN missionaries,
who can have no suspicion of their interfering
with the interests of their church. These missionaries
are constantly employed in making proselytes, and
their endeavours have been attended with some success.

The 7th, we dined at the aleggada's, where we were
magni-

magnificently entertained. There was no other com-
pany but ourselves, and we staid the whole day. This ^{CHAP. IX.}
was the most elegant and complete entertainment of ^{1720.}
any I saw in CHINA.

About ten o'clock in the morning, chairs were sent for the ambaffador and gentlemen of the retinue, and horses for the servants, though the prime minister's house was very near our lodgings. The chairs were carried through two courts, and set down at the entry into a hall, where the aleggada waited to receive the ambaffador. After entering the hall, we were seated on neat cane chairs, with japanned frames, inlaid with mother of pearl. The apartment itself was very simple, open to the south, and the roof supported, on that side, by a row of well turned wooden pillars. It had no cieling; but the rafters appeared finely polished, and perfectly clean. The floor was paved with a checker-work of white and black marble; and in the middle of it stood a large brass chafing-dish, in shape of an urn, full of charcoal. At the entry were placed two large CHINA-cisterns, filled with pure water, in which played some scores of small fishes, catching at crumbs of bread thrown into the water. These fishes are about the size of a minnow, but of a different shape,

CHAP. IX. shape, and beautifully varied with red, white, and yel-

^{1720.}
low spots; and therefore called the gold and silver fish. I never saw any of them out of this country; though, I imagine, they might easily be brought to EUROPE, as they are by no means of the tender kind. I had about twenty of them standing in a window at my lodgings; in a morning, after a frosty night, I found all the water frozen, most of the fishes stiff, and seemingly dead; but, on putting them into cold fresh water, they all recovered, except two or three.

After we had drunk a dish of tea, a collation of broths and victuals was placed on the tables, intermixed with variety of fruits and confections. Every person had a table a-part, and all were served in the same manner. This repast, it seems, was only breakfast, though it might well have passed for dinner.

After this entertainment the aleggada carried us first to see his dogs, of which he had great variety. I formerly observed that this gentleman was a great sportsman. He took greater pleasure in talking of hounds than politicks; though, at the same time, he had the character of a very able minister, and an honest man.

We were now conducted through all the different
apart-

apartments of his house, excepting only those of the ladies, to which none have access but himself, and the eunuchs who attend them. We saw a noble collection of many curiosities, both natural and artificial; particularly a large quantity of old porcelain or CHINA-ware, made in CHINA and JAPAN; and, at present, to be found only in the cabinets of the curious. They consisted chiefly of a great number of jars of different sizes. He took much pleasure in telling when and where they were manufactured; and, as far as I can remember, many of them were above two thousand years old. He added, that, both in CHINA and JAPAN, they had lost the art of making porcelain in that perfection they did in former times; and the fault, in his opinion, lay in the preparation of the materials. These curiosities were piled up on shelves to the very roof of the house, and in such order and symmetry as had a pretty effect.

From the house we went into a little garden, enclosed with a high brick-wall. In the middle of it stood a small basin, full of water, surrounded with several old crooked trees and shrubs; among which I saw that which produces the famous tea. The climate about PEKIN being too cold for this shrub, there are only a few

CHAP. IX. few bushes of it to be found in the gardens of the cu-

1720.

rious. I shall not at present enlarge on this useful plant, which appeared like a currant-bush, as an opportunity will occur of giving a fuller account of it before I leave this place. There was a walk round the garden, which, together with that in the middle, was covered with small gravel. At each end of the middle-walk was a piece of artificial rock-work, with water running under it, through holes so natural they looked as if made by the current of the stream. The rocks were about seven feet high, and shaded with some old bended trees. This garden, and many other things in CHINA, display the taste of the inhabitants for imitating nature.

From the garden we were called to dinner, where we found a plentiful and elegant entertainment, set out in the finest order, far exceeding any thing of that kind we had seen before. We had no musick nor dancing, and the whole was conducted with surprising decency and regularity. The entertainment lasted about two hours, after which we returned to our lodgings.

This day, our gates were opened to people of all characters, and merchants and others allowed to go in and out at pleasure. Though all communication was

not prohibited before this time; it was, however, difficult; and not to be obtained without permission of the proper officer. CHAP. IX.
1720.

The 8th, we dined at the south convent, where the ITALIAN missionaries generally reside. Here all the JESUITS in the place, to the number of ten or twelve, were assembled. We met with a friendly reception, and a most splendid entertainment.

This convent stands within the city, upon a piece of ground given to the fathers by the Emperor. He gave also ten thousand ounces of silver towards building and adorning the chapel; which is, indeed, very neat; and handsomely decorated with pictures of saints, and scripture-pieces, by the best hands. An account of this remarkable benefaction of the Emperor KAMHI is cut out, in the CHINESE language, in letters of gold, and fixed above the great gate; which makes the place more respected. When we arrived, one of the priests was officiating in the chapel, where were assembled about one hundred CHINESE converts. At dinner we had a few bottles of wine, made in the convent; but I cannot say it was good; though the grapes were fine, and of an agreeable taste.

After dinner, we were conducted to the Emperor's

CHAP. IX. stables, where the elephants are kept. The keeper

^{1720.}
asked the ambassador to walk into his apartments, till they were equipped; then we went into the court, and saw these huge animals richly caparisoned in gold and silver stuffs. Each had a rider on his back, who held in their hands small battle-axes, with a sharp pike at one end, to drive and guide them. We stood about an hour admiring those sagacious animals; some of them were very large, who, passing before us at equal distances, returned again behind the stables; and so on round and round, till there seemed to be no end of the procession. The plot, however, was at last discovered, by the features and dress of the riders; and the chief keeper told us there were only sixty of them. The climate about PEKIN is too cold for them to breed; and all these were brought from warmer countries. The Emperor keeps them only for show, and makes no use of them, at least in these northern parts. Some of them were brought near to the place where we sat, and made obeisance to us, by kneeling and making a dreadful noise; others sucked up water from vessels, and spouted it through their trunks, among the mob, or wherever the rider directed. The sagacity of these animals is most surprising, and approach-

es so near to reason, that, in this respect, they surpass CHAP. IX.
all the brute creation. After this show, we took leave 1720.
of the JESUITS, who had accompanied us hither, and
returned to our lodgings.

Next day, all the gentlemen dined at the palace of the Emperor's ninth son, in consequence of an invitation from his chief eunuch, who is a great friend to the RUSSIA-house. As the invitation was not from the Prince, the ambassador would not accept of it. Our entertainment was very magnificent, and accompanied with musick, dancing, and a kind of comedy, which lasted most part of the day. The comedians were of both sexes; if the women's parts were not performed by boys dressed like actresses. As the play was in the CHINESE language, I could understand nothing of it, except from the gesture and action of the performers. It seemed to be a parcel of detached dissimilar interludes, without any principal end, or unity of design. I shall, therefore, only mention one scene, which appeared to me the most extraordinary. There entered, on the stage, seven warriors, all in armour, with different weapons in their hands, and terrible vizards on their faces. After they had taken a few turns about the stage, and surveyed each others ar-

CHAP. IX. ^{1720.} mour, they, at last, fell a quarrelling; and, in the encounter, one of the heroes was slain. Then an angel descended from the clouds, in a flash of lightning, with a monstrous sword in his hand, and soon parted the combatants, by driving them all off the stage; which done, he ascended in the same manner he came down, in a cloud of fire and smoke. This scene was succeeded by several comical farces, which, to me, seemed very diverting, though in a language I did not understand. The last character that appeared on the stage, was a EUROPEAN gentleman, completely dressed, having all his cloaths bedawbed with gold and silver lace. He pulled off his hat, and made a profound reverence to all that passed him. I shall leave it to any one to imagine, what an awkward figure a CHINESE must make in this ridiculous habit. This scene was interrupted, and the performers dismissed, by the master of the feast, from a suspicion that his guests might take offence. The play being finished, we were entertained with jugglers, who exhibited a variety of legerdemain tricks with great dexterity.

The banquet was prolonged the whole day, excepting the time spent in these interludes. No sooner was one course carried off, than another was instantly placed

placed upon the tables; and the whole concluded with CHAP. IX.
 deserts of fruits and sweetmeats. One would scarce 1720.
 have imagined, that luxury had made such progress
 among the sober and industrious CHINESE. It must,
 indeed, be observed, that, there is almost no drinking
 at their entertainments, as they use no liquor, on these
 occasions, but tea, and, now and then, a dram of hot
 arrack. The CHINESE handle the two ivory or wood-
 en pins, which they use instead of forks, with such
 dexterity, that they can even take up needles with
 them. In place of napkins they sometimes employ a
 few square pieces of paper.

C H A P T E R X.

Continuation of occurrences at PEKIN, &c.

THE day following, the ambassador had a fourth
 audience of the Emperor, at the palace in the city.
 This interview was also private, and the ambassador was
 attended only by his secretary. The Emperor repeat-
 ed the assurances of his friendship for his Czarish Maje-
 sty, talked strongly on the vanity and uncertainty of all
 human affairs; adding, that he was now an old man,
 and

CHAP. X. and, by the course of nature, could not live long, and
1720. desired to die in peace with GOD and all mankind.

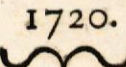
At taking leave, each of them was presented with a complete CHINESE suit of cloaths, made of strong silk, interwoven with dragons claws, and lined with fable.

The 12th, we dined at the FRENCH or western convent, where we again found all the missionaries. The chapel, and other edifices, are handsome; but not so grand as the ITALIAN convent. Father PARANIM is president of this convent; he is a man of parts and address, and in great favour with the Emperor. I was informed this entertainment was given at the expence of the court, and had some reason to believe it was so, as it far exceeded what might reasonably be expected from the JESUITS. The Emperor's band of musick played all the time of dinner; after which we had jugglers and tumblers of great activity. Among the many feats and tricks performed by these people, I shall only mention two or three, which seemed most uncommon. The roof of the room where we sat, was supported by wooden pillars. The juggler took a gimlet, with which he bored one of the pillars, and asked, whether we chose red or white wine? the question being answered, he pulled out the gimlet, and
put

put a quill in the hole, through which run, as from a cask, the wine demanded. After the same manner, he extracted several sorts of liquors, all which I had the curiosity to taste, and found them good of their kinds.

Another of these expert youths took three long sharp-pointed knives, and, throwing them up by turns, kept one always in each hand, and the third in the air. This he continued to perform for a considerable time, catching constantly the falling knife by the handle, without ever allowing it to touch the floor. The knives were exceeding sharp, so that, had he misfed laying hold of the handles, he must infallibly have lost some of his fingers.

The same person took a wooden ball, somewhat less than those commonly used in bowling greens, with a hole through the middle of it, and a rod, two feet long, about the size of a walking staff, pointed at the extremity, to fit the hole in the ball. He then tossed the ball above a yard high, and caught it again upon the point of the rod; not in the hole of the ball, but wherever it happened to meet the point; and, in this manner, he continued to throw up and catch the ball for a considerable time. He now placed the ball upon
the

CHAP. X. the point of the rod, taking no notice of the hole, and
 1720. twirled it round like a top, so quickly, that the motion could not be observed. This seemed extremely dextrous; for, all the while, he played with the ball in appearance; and, when the motion began to slacken, gave it a fresh twirl with his hand, as if the rod and ball had been fastened to each other.

This person also placed a large earthen dish, above eighteen inches diameter, upon the point of the same rod, and twirled it round in the same manner as he did the ball; during this swift motion, he did not always keep the point in the centre of the vessel; on the contrary, he often held it within three inches of the brim. I shall only mention one instance more.

There were placed erect, upon the pavement of the room, two bambos, which are a kind of cane. The length of them was about twenty five feet; at the lower end I reckon them to be near five inches diameter, and, at the top, about the breadth of a crown piece. They were straight, light, and smooth; and each supported by two men. Two boys then climbed up the poles, without the least assistance; and, having reached the top, stood upright, sometimes on one foot and sometimes on the other, and then upon their heads. This being

being done, they laid one hand on the top of the pole, CHAP. X.
 and stretched out their bodies almost at right angles ^{1720.}
 to it. In this posture they continued for a considerable
 time, and even shifted hands. I observed that much
 depended on the men who held the poles; one of the
 two at each pole having it fixed to his girdle; and they
 kept a steady eye on the motions of the boys. There
 were about twenty or thirty of these performers, who
 all belong to the Emperor, and never display their art
 without his permission. I am fully persuaded, that,
 in tricks and feats of dexterity, few nations can equal,
 and none excel, the CHINESE.

After these diversions, we were conducted to the
 Emperor's glass-house, which his Imperial Majesty of-
 ten visits with pleasure. It was erected by himself,
 and is the first manufactory of the kind that ever
 was in CHINA. The person employed to superin-
 tend and carry on this design was KILIAN STUMPF, a
 GERMAN father, lately deceased; a man in great fa-
 vour with the Emperor, and well known, in CHINA,
 for his ingenuity and literature. His Majesty is so
 fond of this glass-work, that he sent several of the
 most curious of its productions in a present to his Cza-
 rish Majesty. It is surprising, that the CHINESE, who
 VOL. II. E have

CHAP. X. have been constantly employed, for so many ages, in
1720. the manufacture of CHINA-ware, should never have
stumbled upon that of glass. This shows evidently,
that the degree of heat necessary in their ovens must
not be very great, or their materials free from sand;
for it is certain they had no knowledge of glass, of
any kind, till this house was erected. I was informed,
that, not long ago, some EUROPEANS brought to CAN-
TON a parcel of prisms, or triangular glasses, which the
CHINESE took for natural productions of rock-chrystal;
and bought them at the rate of one hundred ounces
of silver a-piece. But, from the great quantity im-
ported, they soon discovered their mistake.

On the evening of the 14th, an officer came from
court, desiring the ambassador to wait on the Empe-
ror at his palace of TZANGSUANG; and bring his mu-
sicians along with him. These consisted of perfor-
mers on violins, trumpets, and kettle-drums.

Next day, we arrived at the palace, about ten of
the clock; and had immediate admittance to the Em-
peror's private apartments, few being present but the
officers of the household and Father PARANIM. After
a short conference the musick was ordered to play.
There were in the room ten or twelve of the Empe-
ror's

ror's grandsons, who seemed much entertained with the instruments. I asked an elderly gentleman, who stood by me, how he liked the musick; he said it was very good, but their own was better. No ladies were to be seen; though, I believe, several of them were behind a screen at the other end of the room. CHAP. X.
1720.

The musick being over, the Emperor ordered one of the princes to conduct the ambassador into the gardens belonging to the palace; into which we entered, along a draw bridge, over a canal of pure water. They abounded with shaded walks, arbours, and fish-ponds, in the CHINESE taste. The young princes entertained themselves by shooting with bows and arrows. Some of them displayed great dexterity, being accustomed from their infancy to this exercise, which is accounted both genteel and healthy; as the drawing of the bow extends and strengthens the muscles both of the breast and arms. One of the princes shewed us a bow and arrows, used by the Emperor when young; by which it appeared that he had been a person of extraordinary bodily strength. After we had surveyed the gardens in every quarter, we took leave of the princes, and returned to the city.

This day, arrived in PEKIN Signior MEZZOBARBA,
ambassa-

CHAP. X. ambassador from his Holiness the Pope to the Emperor. This gentleman was a cardinal, and patriarch of ALEXANDRIA. His retinue was composed of ecclesiastics of different orders, and a few servants, who were all lodged in the ITALIAN convent. They came from EUROPE to MACAO in a PORTUGUESE ship; from thence to CANTON; and then, by land, to this place.

The design of this embassy was to enquire into the disputes and misunderstanding, that had lately arisen in this country, betwixt the JESUITS and DOMINICANS; relating to certain rites annually performed by the CHINESE CHRISTIANS, at the tombs of their deceased parents or other relations. This custom seems to be the same with that of the parentalia anciently in use among the GREEKS and ROMANS. It is universal in CHINA, from the emperor to the meanest peasant. It seems the JESUITS permitted their converts to visit the tombs of their relations; alledging, that, without such indulgence, no person would embrace CHRISTIANITY; and, that time would wean them from such superstitious ceremonies. The DOMINICANS, on the other hand, affirmed that it was next to idolatry, and declared it unlawful to allow any such custom; strictly prohibiting all conformity in their converts. These diffe-

differences, in all probability, will not soon be de-
 termined. The Emperor himself tried to make the
 parties compromise matters; but, finding his endea-
 vours ineffectual, he left them to agree or dispute ac-
 cording to their pleasure. He inclined, indeed, to fa-
 vour the opinion of the JESUITS, which he thought
 most reasonable. At any rate, it must be acknow-
 ledged an instance of uncommon condescension, for an
 heathen Emperor to interest himself so much in the
 peace of a CHRISTIAN church.

The 16th, Mr. de LANGE and I paid a visit to the
 Fathers FRIDELLY and KEAGGLER, at the oriental or
 GERMAN convent. This place is large enough; but
 neither the chapel nor buildings are near so magnifi-
 cent as those of the two other convents. It is called
 oriental, because situated in the eastern district of the
 city. Both these fathers, and several other ecclesia-
 sticks of inferior rank in this convent, are GERMANS.
 One of the fathers was a clock-maker; and, by such
 means, they frequently insinuate themselves into ac-
 quaintance with people of distinction, who protect
 them in times of danger. For, in CHINA, they have
 still a great number of enemies, who would gladly see
 both them and their religion extirpated; but the fa-
 vour

CHAP. X. your of the present Emperor hath hitherto prevented,
1720. or disappointed, the design of such persons.

The 17th, I sent to inform the captain of the CHINESE guard, that I intended to take a turn through the city; who immediately gave orders for a foldier to attend me. When we passed through the gate, the clerk marked our names in his book, and dashed them out at our return. I went into several shops, where were sold different kinds of merchandise; particularly those of the goldsmiths, whose business it is to exchange gold for silver, or silver for gold. In these shops are found vast quantities of those valuable metals, cast into bars of different sizes, and piled up one upon another; which are sold only by weight, as there is no current coin in this country; except one small round piece of brass, with a square hole in the middle, through which may be run a string, for the convenience of carrying them to market. This coin, called joss by the CHINESE, is about the value of one tenth of a penny sterling; and is extremely useful among the common people. With one of them, a man can buy a dish of hot tea, a pipe of tobacco, or a dram of brandy, in the streets; and a beggar may dine for three of them. There are, indeed, few beggars to be seen in the city; but,

but, notwithstanding the labour and industry of the inhabitants, they are so numerous, that it is hardly possible to prevent many from being reduced to the utmost necessity. There are cooks shops, where dogs and cats, and such other creatures, are dressed for the entertainment of these people. These coins have KAMHI, the name of the Emperor, on one side; and the words TUM PAO, or the universal price, on the other. CHAP. X.
1720.

When the CHINESE have occasion to buy any thing, above the value of sixpence, they cut off a piece of silver, and weigh it; which is done in a trice.

Although the want of current coin seems ill calculated for the dispatch of business, the CHINESE find no inconvenience on that account. It is in so far preferable to money, that it loses little by wearing in the circulation; which coin does, perhaps, more than is generally imagined.

In most of the shops I found both men, and women, unveiled. They were extremely complaisant, and gave me a dish of tea in every shop. These people expose their gold and silver, and other goods of value, with as much freedom and security, as the merchants do in LONDON OR AMSTERDAM.

The

CHAP. X.

1720.

The 19th, LANGE and I went to the FRENCH convent, but not one of the ecclesiasticks were at home; having all gone to attend Signor MEZZOBARBA at an audience of the Emperor; except an old gentleman, Monsieur BOUVETT, who had formerly written a small treatise, entitled, “ Le portrait de l'Empereur de la “ CHINE;” which he had printed in EUROPE.

The 20th, cold and windy.

The 21st, frost and snow, which softened the air, and laid the dust.

Next day, the ambaffador, with secretary LANGE, went to the council appointed for western affairs, and had a conference on the subject of his embassy.

The winter here lasts only about two months; but is very sharp and piercing while the wind is northerly. If the wind, indeed, is southerly, the air is mild and pleasant, and the sky clear. I mentioned above, that the CHINESE have a method of keeping themselves warm during the cold, which I shall now describe as distinctly as I can.

In building a house, they make two stove-holes, one in each side-wall, about three feet from the gable-end. The holes are a foot square; one serves for receiving the fewel, and the other to let out the smoke, when the
stove

Stove is finished. There is a partition of brick, which runs from one side of the house to the other, about five or six feet from the gable, and only eighteen inches high; which I shall call the front of the stove-bench. Between this and the gable, are built several other thin partitions of brick, in a direction at right angles to the first, having a small opening at the extremity of each. For example, suppose the passage in the first partition to the right hand, and in the second to the left; and so on, alternately, to the last, which communicates with the hole, on the other side of the room, for letting out the smoke. These divisions being made, the whole is arched, or otherwise covered with brick; above which is laid a layer of clay, or plaister, to prevent the smoke from rising through the surface. It is plain, that below this bench there will be a winding channel for the smoke, from one side of the room to the other. A few handfuls of brush-wood, straw, or any kind of fuel, will warm the bench, as much as is necessary, to work or sleep without feeling cold. It is generally covered with mats, felts, or other thick stuffs, according to the ability of the owner.

The 22d, Father KEAGGLER came to visit us. This gentleman had been long in CHINA, and was well ac-

CHAP. X. acquainted with the language, customs, and manners, of
1720. the country. In talking of the extent of PEKIN, he
said, that NANKIN is at least three times as large. At
this rate, NANKIN must be one of the largest cities in
the world. He added, that it was somewhat diminished,
since the court had left that place to reside at PE-
KIN. NANKIN is a place of the most extensive com-
merce, and contains the greatest manufactories, of all
sorts of silk and cotton stuffs, of any city in the coun-
try; besides those of CHINA-ware. It is watered by a
fine navigable river, on which are employed an incre-
dible number of boats, in carrying merchandize and
passengers.

The 23d, cold northerly wind, and strong frost.

The 24th, CHRISTMAS-EVE; the ambassador heard
divine service in the RUSS church.

The 25th, the ambassador and the whole retinue
went to church.

The Emperor sent Father FRIDELLY, accompanied
by several Mandarins, with a present, to his Czarish
Majesty, of six large boxes of tiles, made of CHINA-
ware, fit for such stoves as are used, in RUSSIA, for
warming rooms. They were very pretty, blue and
white; and, with due care, may last for ages.

January

January 1st, 1721, the Emperor's general of the ar-
tillery, together with Father FRIDELLY, and a gentle-
man, called STADLIN, an old GERMAN, and a watch-
maker, dined at the ambaffador's. He was, by birth,
a TARTAR; and, by his conversation, it appeared he
was by no means ignorant in his profession, particu-
larly with respect to the various compositions of gun-
powder used in artificial fire-works. I asked him, how
long the CHINESE had known the use of gun-powder?
He replied, above two thousand years, in fire-works,
according to their records; but that it's application to
the purposes of war, was only a late introduction. As
the veracity and candour of this gentleman were well
known, there was no room to question the truth of
what he advanced on this subject.

The conversation then turned on printing. He said,
he could not then ascertain, precisely, the antiquity of
this invention; but, was absolutely certain, it was much
ancienter than that of gun-powder. It is to be ob-
served, that the CHINESE print with stamps, in the
manner that cards are made in EUROPE. Indeed, the
connection, between stamping and printing, is so close
and obvious, that, it is surprizing the ingenious GREEKS

CHAP. X. and ROMANS, so famous for their medals, never discovered the art of printing.

1721.

On this occasion, Father FRIDELLY told me, that several of the missionaries, who had the good fortune to be in favour with the Emperor, had often solicited that prince to become CHRISTIAN, and allow himself to be baptized; but he always excused himself, by saying, he worshipped the same GOD with the CHRISTIANS; and that such a change of religion might occasion some disturbance in the empire, which by all means he would endeavour to prevent. However this be, it is certain, that, on CHRISTMAS day, he sent one of his chief eunuchs to the ITALIAN convent, with orders, that prayers should be offered for him; which was accordingly done, and the eunuch remained in church all the time of divine service.

Next day, the ambassador had another private audience of the Emperor, at the palace of TZAN-SHUYANG. The weather being very cold, the hall was warmed with several large chafing-dishes, filled with charcoal. We staid above two hours; during which time his Majesty talked very familiarly, on various subjects, particularly history; wherein he discovered himself well acquainted with that of the holy scriptures,

as well as of his own country. He said, that the chronology of the CHINESE was far more ancient than that of the holy scriptures; but observed, that it ended back in fabulous accounts, concerning which nothing certain could be determined. CHAP. X.
1721.

As to NOAH'S flood, he affirmed, that, at or near the same time, there was a great deluge in CHINA, which destroyed all the inhabitants of the plains; but that such as escaped to the mountains were saved.

He then discoursed of the invention of the loadstone, which, he said, was known in CHINA above two thousand years ago; for, it appeared from their records, that, a certain ambassador, from some distant island, to the court of CHINA, missing his course, in a storm, was cast on the CHINESE coast, in the utmost distress. The then Emperor, whose name I have forgot, after entertaining him hospitably, sent him back to his own country. And, to prevent the like misfortunes, in his voyage homeward, gave him a compass to direct his course.

The Emperor also confirmed most of the particulars, mentioned above, concerning printing and gun-powder. It is from the holy scriptures, most part of which have been translated by the missionaries, that the learned

ed.

CHAP. X. ed men, in CHINA, have acquired any knowledge of
1721. the western ancient history. And their own records,
they say, contain accounts of transactions of much
greater antiquity.

At taking leave, the Emperor told the ambassador that he liked his conversation. He desired to be excused for sending for him in such cold weather, and smiling said, he knew the RUSSIANS were not afraid of cold.

I cannot omit taking notice of the good nature and affability of this ancient monarch, on all occasions. Though he was now in the eightieth year of his age, and sixtieth of his reign, he still retained a sound judgment, and senses intire; and, to me, seemed more sprightly than many of the Princes his sons.

The 3d, Mr. Secretary LANGE and I dined at the FRENCH CONVENT, where we found Signor MEZZOBARBA. I never had an opportunity of seeing that gentleman at our lodgings; as nothing passed between him and our ambassador, but messages of common civility and complement.

The 4th, I rode, from our lodgings, through the city, and went out at the north gate, at which we entered on our arrival at PEKIN. I proceeded eastward

to the end of the north wall, and then along the east wall to the south gate, at which I entered, and returned to our lodgings. This tour took me up about two hours and an half, at a pretty round trot; and, at the same rate, I reckon I could have rode quite round the city in less than five hours; whence a judgment may be formed of the circumference of the walls. The suburbs also are very extensive, especially to the east and south, and, being interspersed with many burying places, all inclosed with brick-walls, and planted with cypress and other ever-greens, contribute much to beautify the neighbourhood of this great city. The CHINESE are extremely attentive to the fencing and ornamenting these groves, or burying places; a natural consequence of their uncommon respect for their parents and relations while living, and of their extraordinary veneration for them when dead. Annually, on certain days, they resort to these groves, carrying provisions along with them, and celebrate a kind of feast, in commemoration of their deceased relations.

I shall give an example of the filial duty of the CHINESE, in a story I have often heard affirmed for true. A youth, finding his parents reduced to extreme poverty, and knowing of no means for their relief, went
and

CHAP. X.

1721.

and sold himself as a slave; and, having received the price from his master, immediately brought it to his aged parents. When this was spent, the boy had no other resource than to run away from his master, and sell himself again to another; and this he practised for several times, with the same view, although he knew the severity of the law in such cases.

The 6th, while walking through the street, I observed an old beggar picking vermin from his tattered cloaths, and putting them into his mouth; a practice, which, it seems, is very common among this class of people. When a CHINESE and TARTAR are angry at one another, the TARTAR, in reproach, calls the CHINESE louse-eater; and the latter, in return, calls the other fish-skin coat; because the MANTZUR TARTARS, who live near the river AMOOR, subsist by fishing, and, in summer, wear coats made of the skins of fishes. But this habit is used only in summer; for, in winter, they wear furs.

The 7th, the Emperor sent us a present of various sorts of fine fruits, particularly some excellent oranges. On this occasion, Father FRIDELLY told me, that the tree was still standing at CANTON, from which the seed was taken that the missionaries first sent to PORTUGAL,

where

where it has prospered so wonderfully; and, from the place whence it was brought, bears the name of the CHINA-orange. I doubt not, that, with due care, some others of the rare fruits and plants in this country, even tea itself, might be propagated in EUROPE, or in some of the AMERICAN colonies. CHAP. X.
1721.

I cannot tell whether the coffee-tree is to be found in CHINA; but am certain that none of its seeds are prepared and drunk there, as among the PERSIANS, TURKS, and EUROPEANS.

The 8th, the weather was much milder, the wind southerly, with a small mizzling rain, enough to lay the disagreeable dust.

Next day, secretary LANGE and I rode through the streets, to the eastern convent, to visit our friend FRIDELLY. As we passed, we observed a juggler diverting a crowd. On our coming near he played several tricks with great dexterity. He took an handful of small pence, formerly mentioned, with holes in the middle of them, and laid them on a table. He then thrust them into his nostril, one by one, with his finger; and this he continued to perform, till the whole was exhausted. After this, he suspended an iron-chain, of round links, about four feet long. He then took a

CHAP. X. mouse out of a box, and made it dance upon the table,
1721. quite loose. Then the mouse, at his order, went in
at one link of the chain, and out at another, till it
ascended to the top; from whence it came down a-
gain, the contrary way, without missing so much as
one single ring.

The 12th, the Emperor came from TZAN-SHU-YANG,
to his palace in the city.

The 13th, the master of the ceremonies came to
invite the ambassador to court on the 15th, the first
day of the new moon; and, according to the CHINESE
computation, the first day of the new year. This is
one of their highest festivals; and what added to the so-
lemnity of the present, was its being the beginning of
a new seculum, or space of sixty years, observed by the
CHINESE; besides, the Emperor had reigned all the
last seculum, and was now going to enter on the se-
cond. On this occasion were to be assembled several
TARTAR princes; particularly, the Kutuchtu and the
Tush-du-Chan, together with many persons of distinc-
tion from KOREA, and all the dominions of CHINA.
This feast begins on the first day, and continues during
the increase of the moon.

The 15th, we went early to court; and found most
of

of the grandees assembled in the court-yard, sitting on CHAP. X.
their cushions, and a few of them in the great hall. 1721.

We entered the court at the great gates, which are seldom opened, except on such extraordinary occasions. The Emperor soon came, and seated himself upon his throne, which was more magnificent than that at TZAN-SHU-YANG; but, like it, plain and unornamented. His Majesty was dressed in the same manner as at our first audience. We were placed, within the hall, on the right of the throne; and Signior MEZ-ZOBARBA, with the missionaries, at no great distance from us. In the mean time, all the people of distinction, who came from distant places, made their nine bows, to the ground, without the hall. And, as there was not room in the hall to contain one half of the company, many of them remained in the court during the whole time of the audience. Our entertainment was almost the same as at our first audience; which, therefore, I shall not describe.

The Emperor was very chearful, and sent for several of his old acquaintance to speak with him. The Tush-du-Chan and some other TARTAR princes were placed on the left of the throne, with the Emperor's sons and grandsons. In a word, this assembly ex-

CHAP. X. ceeded, in number and quality, any thing of the kind

1721.

I ever saw. I was in hopes to have seen the Kutuchtu on this occasion; but was informed that the Emperor, who shows great respect to this venerable priest, detained him in his private apartments.

This palace occupies a large space of ground, encompassed with an high brick-wall. There are several streets for servants and officers of the household. Many of the houses are high, and covered with yellow varnished tiles, which appear like gold in the sun. Northward from the palace is a large canal, of an irregular figure, where the imperial family divert themselves by fishing. This canal is artificial; and the earth dug out of it has raised an high bank, from whence you have a full view of the city, and the country adjacent, to a considerable distance. This mount rises to a ridge, which is planted with trees; resembling the wild and irregular scenes of nature that frequently present themselves in this country. The canal and mount are of an equal length, which I compute to be about an ENGLISH mile. This must have been a work of vast expence and labour; and, it must be confessed, contributes greatly to the beauty of the place.

The 16th was spent in receiving visits of compliment,

ment, from the ministers and officers of the court, on CHAP. X.
 occasion of the new year. 1721.

Next day, the visits were returned by Mr. secretary
 LANGE and GLAZUNOFF, in name of the ambaf-
 fador.

The 18th, some of the retinue, accompanied with
 a CHINESE friend, went to a great market, held in the
 fuburbs, about a mile without the city to the fouth-
 west. Here we found a number of toys, and things of
 value, both new and fecond-hand, expofed to fale in
 the open ftreet.

Near this place flood a magnificent temple, the
 doors of which being open, we walked into it; and faw,
 ftanding at the fouth end, a monftrous image, about
 twenty-five feet high, carved and gilt, having twelve
 arms and hands, a frightful vifage, and great goggling
 eyes. By the touch it feemed to be made of a kind of
 plaifter. This image is called Fo, which fignifies God
 in the CHINESE language. Whilft we walked about in
 the temple, many people entered, who kneeled and
 bowed feveral times to the image; after which they re-
 tired, without taking notice of us, or of any body elfe.
 In all the leffer temples, I had formerly feen, I found
 a great number of images of inferior deities, or repu-
 ted

CHAP. X. ted faints; but this was occupied by Fo only, without
1721. any rival.

From the temple we went to a publick tea-house, where we saw many people drinking tea and smoking tobacco; from thence to a tavern, where we dined; and, in the evening, returned to the city.

Next day, I was present at the representation of a kind of farce, in the publick street, not far from our lodgings. There were about twenty strollers assembled on this occasion, who entertained the crowd with many legerdemain tricks, and unnatural gestures. The stage was covered with silk-stuff of various colours.

During the festival there are many such stage-plays performed in all the publick streets. You also find often high crosses erected, on which are hoisted a number of pendants and streamers of party-coloured silks, that make a pretty appearance. At this season all the shops are shut; almost no business is done; and the people go about, dressed in their best cloaths, as on holidays in EUROPE.

The 20th, the ambassador and all the gentlemen of the retinue were invited to dine, at a publick house in the city, by a young CHINESE gentleman. And all of us accepted the invitation, except the ambassador. Our friend

friend was so polite as to send chairs for his guests, about CHAP. X.
ten of the clock; and, at eleven, we reached the house, 1721.
which was the largest of that sort I ever saw; and
could easily contain six or eight hundred people. The
roof was supported by two rows of wooden pillars.
This tavern consisted only of one apartment, great part
of which was filled with long tables, having benches,
on each side, for the accommodation of the company.
During the time of dinner we were entertained with
musick; and, after it, by a company of players, main-
tained by the house, who daily act plays on a stage e-
rected at one side of the room. None but people of
fashion come to this place.

When a person intends to treat his friends at one
of these houses, he sends previous notice of his design,
with a note of the company, and the sum to be laid
out on each of them; agreeably to these orders, things
are executed with the greatest punctuality. The ex-
pence on each of our company could not be less than
three or four ounces of silver, as we staid the whole
day, and had a splendid entertainment, consisting of
many courses and deserts, prepared and served in the
best fashion of the country. I cannot but observe, on
this occasion also, the order and dexterity with which
the

CHAP. X. the servants performed their parts in such a numerous
 1721. assembly. I shall not pretend to give any account of
 the play; only, that the company seemed highly pleased; and the performers consisted of both men and women, well dressed, and of decent behaviour.

At several tables the people were employed in gaming; some playing at cards, others at dice and draughts. I saw no money among them; though I was informed some of the CHINESE play very high. In the evening, we took leave of our hospitable friend, and returned to our lodgings.

The day following, Father PARANIM sent us a present of a large sturgeon, and some other fresh fish, brought from the river AMOOR. These can only be carried, to such a distance, in the coldest season; when they are preserved fresh, by being kept frozen among the snow. This method is practised, with success, in northern countries; for, provided the fish is immediately exposed to the frost, after being caught, it may be carried, in snow, for many miles, almost as fresh as when taken out of the water.

The 22d, I went along with our new CHINESE friend, named SIASIEY, to see a manufactory of CHINA-ware, standing on the bank of the river YU, about twelve EN-

GLISH miles eastward of the city. After arriving at CHAP. X.
the place, we passed through several shades and houses, 1721.
where I saw a number of people at work. The ovens,
in particular, seemed very curious. But my view was
so cursory and superficial, that I could form no judgment
of the materials, or manner of making these
cleanly and beautiful vessels, which still remain unrivalled
by the similar productions of any other nation. I
inquired into the truth of the opinion which the EUROPEANS
entertain, "that the clay must lie a century,
"to digest, before it is fit for use;" and was told, by a
master workman, that a few months preparation was
sufficient. So far as I could observe, they made no secret,
at this place, of what they were employed about.
I was, however, told, that, to the south, the CHINESE
are more cautious, and carefully conceal their art from
strangers. One thing I firmly believe, that, although
the EUROPEANS understood the art of making porcelain,
the CHINESE would undersell them at every market
in the world. This valuable manufacture is carried
on in most of the towns in CHINA; and, as it is sold but
a little above the rate of common earthen-ware in EUROPE,
the materials of which it is composed can neither be rare
nor costly. This important branch of trade

CHAP. X. trade brings an immense treasure into the country, and

1721. affords employment to vast numbers of poor, who, otherwise, would be useless and burdensome to the publick. Besides china, they also make a kind of delf, or earthen-ware, for the use of the lower class of people.

Next day, I happened to meet two gentlemen from the peninsula of KOREA. Their physiognomies were nearly the same with those of the CHINESE; but their dress different. What surprised me most was, that they were as ignorant of the spoken CHINESE language as I was, and delivered themselves by an interpreter. When they have any thing material to communicate they put it in writing, which is easily understood by the CHINESE. They write in the same manner as the CHINESE, from the top of the page, in straight lines, to the bottom, and with a pencil, like those commonly used by painters.

KOREA is a fine country, subject to CHINA, situated betwixt the long wall and the river AMOOR; and runs out into a point, towards the island of JAPAN, and the EASTERN ocean. The country is very plentiful, and abounds with corn and cattle.

CHAP.

C H A P T E R X I.

Occurrences at PEKIN continued; the festival held at court on the new year, &c.

THE 24th, the master of the ceremonies came to invite the ambaffador to the festival of the new year, which is always when the moon is at the full, to be held, at the imperial palace of TZANG-SHU-YANG, on the 29th.

In the mean time, the cold continued very piercing; fo that I faw horses, with loaded carriages, crofs the ditches, without the walls of the city, upon the ice.

The 29th, chairs were fent from court to carry the ambaffador, and gentlemen of the retinue; we arrived there in the evening, and lodged in a houfe near the palace. Near our lodgings was a pretty garden, with a canal, on which was a fmall pleasure-boat. In the middle of the canal, was raifed an artificial mount, planted with fome barren trees, in imitation of nature. We afcended, by a winding path, to the top of the mount, from whence we had a fine view of all the country around.

The 30th, being the first day of the festival, we

CHAP. XI. went to court. We were met at the gate by the ma-

^{1721.}
ster of the ceremonies, who conducted us to the bottom of the stairs of the great hall, where we took our places, in the open court yard, among a numerous assembly of grandees, whom we found sitting cross-legged on their cushions. After waiting about a quarter of an hour, his Majesty appeared, and seated himself upon the throne; upon which all the company stood. The CHINESE made their bows, as is usual on such occasions; but we were permitted to make our compliments in our own fashion. It seemed somewhat strange to a BRITON, to see some thousands of people upon their knees, and bowing their heads to the ground, in most humble posture, to a mortal like themselves.

We were immediately brought into the hall; and the ambassador was conducted to the throne, in order to congratulate his Imperial Majesty on the anniversary of the new year. Our station, on this occasion, as at the first audience, was to the right of the throne. All the princes, the Emperor's sons and grandsons, together with the Tush-du-chan, and some other persons of high distinction, were placed to the left, opposite to us. As the customs of the CHINESE are, in many instances, quite contrary to those of the EUROPEANS; so,

I have been informed, that, among them, the left hand CHAP. XI.
is the place of greatest honour. After we had drunk 1721.
a dish of tea, the Emperor beckoned to the ambassador
to come to him again; and inquired into the customs
and ceremonies, at the courts of EUROPE, on festi-
vals of this nature; adding, at the same time, "he
" had been informed, that, after drinking the king's
" health, on such occasions, the EUROPEANS broke the
" glasses. He approved, he said, of the drinking-part;
" but did not comprehend the meaning of breaking
" the glasses;" and laughed heartily at the joke.

The great hall was, by this time, almost full of com-
pany; and a number of people of distinction still re-
mained in the area, who could not find room in the
hall.

The entertainment now began to be served up. The
victuals were carried about in great order; and placed,
before the company, on large tables. All the dishes
were cold, except those set before his Majesty; who
supplied us plentifully with hot provisions, from the
throne.

Dinner being ended, the sports were begun by a
company of wrestlers, composed of CHINESE and TAR-
TARS. Many of them were almost naked, having no
cloaths.

CHAP. XI. cloaths but tight canvass drawers. They performed
 1721. their parts in the area before the hall. When any of
 them was severely bruised by his antagonist, or much
 hurt by a fall, which frequently happened, the Emperor
 sent him a cordial, and ordered him to be properly
 taken care of. Sometimes also, when he perceived
 the combatants too eager and warm, a sign was given
 to part them. These instances of humanity were very
 amiable in the old monarch, and rendered the sight
 of such shocking spectacles more tolerable; for many
 of these wrestlers received such blows and falls, as were
 sufficient to have knocked the breath out of their bodies.

To the wrestling succeeded many other games, and
 mock-fights; in which, the performers, armed, some
 with lances, others with battle-axes, quarter-staffs, flails,
 or cudgels, acted their parts with great dexterity.

Then appeared two troops of TARTARS, clothed in
 coats of tiger-skins, armed with bows and arrows, and
 mounted on hobby-horses. At first, they behaved as
 enemies; but, after some skirmishes with their arrows,
 the parties were reconciled, and began a dance to a
 dismal tune of vocal and instrumental musick. The
 dance was interrupted by a person in a frightful mask,
 of a tall stature, dressed and mounted like the TARTARS,
 who,

who, they said, represented the devil. After making CHAP. XI.
several unsuccessful attacks, on the united body of the ^{1721.}
TARTARS, this formidable hero was at length killed by
an arrow, and carried off in triumph. During the
dance, each TARTAR had a small basket in one hand,
and an arrow in the other, wherewith they scraped on
the basket, keeping time to the musick. This scrap-
ing sounded a little harsh to an ITALIAN ear; for I
could observe Signor MEZZOBARBA, and his retinue,
smiling at the performance.

While the TARTARS performed in the court, one of
the Emperor's sons, a Prince of about twenty years of
age, danced alone in the hall, and attracted the eyes
of the whole company. His motions were, at first, very
slow, so that he seemed scarcely to move at all; but, af-
terwards, became more brisk and lively. The Emperor
was chearful, and seemed well pleased with the different
performers; but particularly with an old TARTAR, who
played on a chime of little bells, with two short ivory
rods. The instruments of musick were very various,
and all tuned to the CHINESE taste. The Emperor
told the ambassador, that he knew well their musick
would not please an EUROPEAN ear; but that every na-
tion liked their own best.

The

CHAP. XI. The dancing being over, there was hoisted up a
1721. large vessel, resembling a tub, between two posts erected
in the area for that purpose. In the vessel were
placed three boys, who performed many dexterous
tricks, both in the vessel and on the posts, too tedious
to mention. By this time the sun was set, and the
company were soon after dismissed for the night.

Next day, the rejoicings were renewed. We did
not, however, go to court before the evening; because
the fire-works would not begin till the sun was set.
On our arrival, we were conducted through a garden,
westward from the palace, in the middle of which stood
a large building, with covered galleries all around. Be-
fore the house was a canal, having over it a draw-
bridge. We took our places on the gravel-walk, just
under the gallery, where the Emperor sat with his
wives and family. Hard by us was the Kutuchtu, in
his tent, having one of his lamas standing at the door.
This priest never once appeared out of his tent, du-
ring the whole show. All the grandees and officers
of state were seated on their cushions, along the bank
of the canal. The machinery, for the fire-works, was
placed on the other side of the canal; and nobody was
permitted

permitted to go thither, except the people who managed it. CHAP. XI.
1721.

About five of the clock a signal was given, for beginning to play off the fire-works, by a rocket let fly from the gallery where the Emperor sat; and, in the space of a few minutes, many thousand lanterns were lighted. These lanterns were made of paper of different colours, red, blue, green, and yellow; and hung on posts about six feet high, scattered over all the garden; which exhibited a very pleasant prospect to the eye.

Another signal was then given, for playing off the rockets. They sprung upwards to a prodigious height, and fell down in figures of stars, displaying a great variety of beautiful colours. The rockets were accompanied with what I shall call crackers, for want of a more proper name. Their explosion resembled the reports of many great guns, fired at certain intervals, and exhibited a view of many charming colours, and forms of fire. These, with a few fire-works of different kinds, intermixed, continued for the space of three hours.

Opposite to the gallery where the Emperor sat, was suspended a large round vessel, about twenty feet in diameter, between two posts about thirty feet high.

CHAP. XI. A rocket sent from the gallery lighted a match, hang-
1721. ing from the vessel, which immediately caused the bot-
tom of it to drop down with a loud noise. Then fell out a lettice, or grate-work, all on fire, and hung between the vessel and the ground, burning furiously, in various colours. This continued for ten minutes, and really exhibited a most curious sight. It seems, this lettice-work was composed of materials that immediately kindled, on being exposed to the air; for no person was seen near the machine.

The grate-work being extinguished, there appeared a lighted match, hanging from the middle of the vessel, and burning up to it. As soon as the fire reached the vessel, thirty fair paper-lanterns, of various colours, dropped from it; and hung, in a straight line, below one another, between it and the ground; which immediately caught fire of themselves, and formed a beautiful and well-proportioned column of parti-coloured light. After this, fell out about ten or twelve pillars of the same form, but of a lesser size; these also took fire as soon as they dropped. This scene continued till the number of one thousand lanterns fell from the vessel, which diminished, every time, till the last.

last were very small. I must confess this presented a CHAP. XI.
delightful object to the spectators. 1721.

I could not help being surprized at the ingenuity of the artist, in crowding such a number of lanterns into so small and simple a machine as this seemed to be; and, at the same time, with so much order, that all of them dropped and kindled of themselves, with equal regularity, as if he had let them fall from his hand; for not even one of them was extinguished by accident, or in the least entangled by another. This concluded the first day's entertainment.

The 31st, in the evening, we returned to court; where was opened a new scene of fire-works, which continued, with great variety, till ten o'clock at night.

The 1st of February, we went again to court; where the fire-works were resumed in many different, well-executed, designs. What pleased me most, was a small mount, raised in the middle of the garden, from which sprung a stream of white and blue fire, in imitation of water. The top of the mount contained a cavity, in shape of a large urn, from which the fire rose to a prodigious height.

Opposite to the gallery, where the Emperor sat, were erected three large frames, about thirty feet high each.

CHAP. XI. each. On one was a monstrous figure of a dragon;
1721. on the second, a man on horseback; and the third represented an elephant, with a human figure on his back. All these were composed of a deep blue fire; and were interwoven with vines and grapes, hanging about on all sides, of white, red, and blue fire.

Besides these, there were exhibited, on this occasion, many other ingenious designs of fire-works; which far surpassed any thing of the kind, I ever saw, though I have been present at performances of this nature, exhibited, at ST. PETERSBURG, by the best artists in EUROPE. Besides the art displayed in the contrivance and figure, these works furnished, in particular, a wonderful variety of most beautiful colours, far exceeding my ability to describe. I must confess, they far out-did my expectations, and even common fame, which seldom lessens things of this nature.

The following day, the Emperor gave the ambassador a private audience, and inquired how he liked the diversions and fire-works. On this occasion, the Emperor repeated what has been already observed concerning the antiquity of illuminations composed of gun-powder; and added, that, although fire-works had been known in CHINA for more than two thousand years,

years, he himself had made many improvements upon them, and brought them to their present perfection. CHAP. XI.
1721.

The 3d, we returned to the city, in a cold frosty day, and the wind at north-west. We found the rejoicings still going on at PEKIN; for stages were erected, and plays represented, in all the principal streets through which we passed.

The affairs relating to the embassy being nearly finished, we began now to prepare for our journey to the westward; which was to take place as soon as the extremity of the cold was abated.

The 9th, three missionaries, PARANIM, DEMAIL, and MORAN, came to pay their respects to the ambassador, and beg the favour of him, that Signior NICOLAI, one of their society, might be permitted to accompany him in his journey to EUROPE; which was granted, provided it was agreeable to the Emperor. The reason of this request was supposed to be, that, Signior MEZZO-BARBA having returned to ROME, without accomplishing the ends of his embassy; the Emperor, who favoured the cause of the JESUITS, had concerted with them, to send NICOLAI to the court of ROME, in order to represent the state of this affair, before MEZZOBARBA could arrive.

Next

CHAP. XI.

^{1721.} Next day, the Emperor sent three officers with presents to his Czarish Majesty; the chief of which were, tapistry for two rooms, neatly wrought on a rich silk-stuff; a set of small enamelled gold cups; some japaned cups, set with mother of pearl; three flower-pieces, curiously embroidered on taffety; two chests of rockets, prepared in the CHINESE fashion; about twenty or thirty pieces of silk, in most of which was interwoven the dragon with five claws; a parcel of different sorts of curious fans for ladies; also, a box containing some rolls of white CHINESE paper, the sheets of which were of a size much larger than common; besides several other toys, scarce worth mentioning. From these particulars it appears, that these two mighty monarchs were not very lavish in their presents to each other; preferring curiosities to things of real value.

The 11th, several officers came, from court, with presents to the ambassador, and every person of the retinue, corresponding to their different stations and characters; and, so minutely and exactly was this matter managed, that even the meanest of our servants was not neglected. The presents, consisting of a complete CHINESE dress, some pieces of damasks, and other stuffs, were, indeed, of no great value. They were,
how-

however, carried along the streets, wrapped up in yellow silk, with the usual parade of things belonging to the court; a circumstance which is reckoned one of the greatest honours that can be conferred on a foreign minister. CHAP. XI.
1721.

Next day, the Emperor sent to ask the ambassador, whether he inclined to accompany him to a hunting-match, in a forest not far distant from PEKIN; to which his excellency readily agreed.

The 13th, I dined with one of my CHINESE friends, called FANGFUNG. In going thither, I met, in the street, two men riding upon asses, with their servants leading them by the bridle. I soon perceived they were KAWLEES; which is the name given, by the CHINESE and TARTARS, to the people of KOREA; whom I have mentioned above.

The 14th, the weather was very fine and warm.

The 15th, we went to a fair in the suburbs, which is held the first day of every new moon, where we found many things exposed to sale, not commonly found in shops.

The 16th, the weather being favourable, I took a ride round the walls of the city; which I performed, at an easy trot, in the space of four hours; whereby
the

CHAP. XI. the compass of PEKIN may be nearly computed. The
1721. suburbs, especially to the east and south, are very extensive; and, in many places of them, the buildings are equal to those within the walls.

The 17th, being now on the point of our departure, in order to make the most of the short time we had to stay, I rode about twelve miles eastward from PEKIN, accompanied with a CHINESE friend, to the banks of the river; which I found crowded with a number of barques, of different sizes, which are constantly employed in carrying provisions, and other stores, to the city, from distant parts of the country. I saw many vessels sailing down the stream, towards the south-east. And I was informed, there are nine thousand nine hundred and ninety nine vessels constantly employed on this river; but why confined to such an odd number I could neither learn, nor comprehend. During a month, or six weeks, in winter, this river is frozen over; at which season, provisions are conveyed by land-carriage, or along the ice.

On this occasion also I revisited the CHINA-manufactory, in order to try whether I could learn any thing of that curious art. But, though the people were very complaisant, and showed me every thing I desired
them,

them, I returned as ignorant as I went thither; and, CHAP. XI.
 I am persuaded, that, before a person can get any know- 1721.
 ledge of the affair, he must be bred a potter, and have
 time to inspect its whole progress; of which these people
 seem to make no secret.

The fields, along the banks of the river, are well cultivated; producing fine wheat, and other sorts of grain. I saw also great plantations of tobacco, which they call tharr, and which yields very considerable profits; as it is universally used in smoking, by persons of all ranks, of both sexes, in CHINA; and, besides, great quantities are sent to the MONGALS, who prefer the CHINESE manner of preparing it before every other. They make it into a gross powder, like saw dust, which they keep in a small bag, and fill their little brass-pipes out of it, without touching the tobacco with their fingers. The smoke is very mild, and has quite a different smell from ours. It is reported the CHINESE have had the use of tobacco for many ages.

I observed, that, in cold weather, the CHINESE chewed a kind of nut, about the bigness of a nutmeg, which they called beetle; it is of an astringent quality. They say, it both keeps them warm and cleans their teeth.

Next day was spent in preparing for our journey.

CHAP. XI.

1721.

On the 18th, all our gentlemen dined with my CHINESE friend, named SIASIEY, where we met with a friendly reception, and a sumptuous feast. After dinner, our hospitable landlord put about his cups very freely. At last, he took me by the hand, and desired I would let the ambassador return and remain with him; and he would give me my choice of which of his wives or daughters I liked best. I could not but return my friend hearty thanks for his obliging offer; which, however, I thought it not proper to accept.

Next day, I went to see the market where provisions were sold. It was a spacious oblong, spread with gravel, very neat and clean. The butchers had their shops in a shade, running quite round the place. I saw little beef, but a great deal of mutton. In the middle, was great store of poultry, wild-fowl, and venison; but, what surpris'd me not a little, was, to find about a dozen of dead badgers expos'd to sale. The CHINESE, it seems, are very fond of these animals; which are accounted unclean in other parts of the world. All the CHINESE merchants have the art of exposing their goods to sale dress'd up in the most advantageous manner; and, even in purchasing any trifling thing, whatever the case be that

that holds it, it is half the cost, and often exceeds it in value. CHAP. XI.
1721.

The 21st, being the day appointed for hunting with the Emperor, at one of the clock in the morning, horses were brought to our lodgings, for the ambassador and those who attended him. We immediately mounted, and, after riding about six miles, to the south-west of the city, at break of day, we reached the gates of the park called CHAYZA; where we were received by an officer, and conducted, through the forest, to a summer-house, about a mile from the gate, in which the Emperor had slept the preceding night. This was a small but neat building, having a double row of galleries, open to the forest, on all sides, and an avenue leading to it from the gate, planted with several rows of trees. At some distance from the house, we dismounted, and were met by the master of the ceremonies, who conducted us into a gallery. As soon as we entered, the good old Emperor, who had risen long before our arrival, sent one of his eunuchs to salute the ambassador, and ordered us tea and other victuals. On the south side of the house is a canal, filled with clear water, and several large fish-ponds, which make a great addition to the beauties of this charming place.

CHAP. XI. At a convenient distance from the house, stood about

1721.

 a thousand tents, where the courtiers and grandees had lodged the night before. Breakfast being over, the Emperor, who was very fond of arms, sent to desire a sight of the ambassador's fowling-piece. He returned it, with several of his own to be shown us. They had all match-locks. The CHINESE are possessed with a notion, that flints, in their climate, acquire a moisture which hinders their firing. But, as far as I could perceive, the air had little effect upon our flints.

A signal was then given that the Emperor was coming; upon which all the great men drew up in lines, from the bottom of the stairs to the road leading to the forest, all on foot, dressed in their hunting habits, the same with those used by the officers and cavalry of the army, when in the field, and armed with bows and arrows. We had a proper place assigned us, and made our bows to his Majesty, who returned a gracious smile, with signs to follow him. He was seated, cross-legged, in an open machine, carried by four men, with long poles rested on their shoulders. Before him lay a fowling-piece, a bow, and sheaf of arrows. This has been his hunting equipage for some years, since he left off riding; but, in his youth, he went usually

ly

ly, every summer, several days-journey without the long wall, and carried along with him all the Princes^{CHAP. XI.} his sons, and many persons of distinction, to the number frequently of some thousands, in order to hunt in the woods and deserts; where he continued for the space of two or three months. Their provisions were restricted to bare necessities, and often to what they caught in the woods of TARTARY. This piece of policy he practised chiefly with a view to harden the officers of his army, and prevent their falling into idleness and effeminacy among the CHINESE; and, at the same time, to set a good example of the austerities he recommended, by living on the same hard fare he prescribed to others.

As soon as the Emperor had passed, the company mounted and followed him, at some distance, till we came into the open forest, where all formed into a semicircle, in the centre of which was the Emperor, having on his left hand about eight or ten of his sons and grandsons, and the ambassador on his right, about fifty paces distant; close by him, were the master of the chace, with some grey-hounds, and the grand falconer with his hawks. I could not but admire the beauty of these fine birds. Many of them were as white

CHAP. XI. white as doves; having one or two black feathers in
1721. their wings or tails. They are brought from SIBERIA,
or places to the north of the river AMOOR.

Our wings being extended, there were many hares started, which the company endeavoured to drive towards the Emperor, who killed many of them with arrows as they passed; those he missed, he made a sign to some of the Princes to pursue, who also killed several of them with arrows; but no other person was permitted to draw a bow, or stir from the line. The same rules of hunting, I formerly observed, are practised by the MONGALLS.

From the open field, we continued our route westward, to a place among thickets and tall reeds, where we sprung a number of pheasants, partridges, and quails. His Majesty then laid aside his bow and arrows, and carried a hawk on his hand; which he flew as occasion offered. The hawks generally raked in the pheasants while flying; but, if they took the reeds or bushes, they soon caught them.

After proceeding about two or three miles farther into the forest, we came to a tall wood, where we found several sorts of deer. The young men went in and beat the woods, whilst the rest of the company remained

ed

ed without. We saw much game pass us; but nobody drew a bow, till the Emperor had killed a stag, which he did very dexterously, with a broad-headed arrow; after which the Princes had leave to kill several bucks; among which was one of that species, that bears the musk, called *kaberda* in SIBERIA, of which I have formerly given a description. The CHINESE musk is stronger, and therefore preferable to that from northern parts.

We had now been six hours on horse-back, and, I reckon, had travelled about fifteen ENGLISH miles; but no end of the forest yet appeared. We turned short from this wood southwards, till, coming to some marshes, overgrown with tall reeds, we roused a great many wild boars; but, as it was not the season for killing them, they all escaped. The hunting these fierce animals is reckoned the most dangerous of all kinds of sport, except the chase of lions and tigers. Every one endeavoured to avoid them, and several of them run furiously through the thickest troops of horse. The Emperor was so cautious as to have a company of men, armed with lances, to guard his machine.

We continued the sport till about four o'clock, when we came to a high artificial mount, of a square figure,

CHAP. XI. figure, raised in the middle of a plain, on the top of
1721. which were pitched about ten or twelve tents, for
 the imperial family. This mount had several winding
paths leading to the top, planted, on each side, with
rows of trees, in imitation of nature. To the south
was a large bason of water, with a boat upon it; from
whence, I suppose, the earth has been taken that form-
ed this mount. At some distance from the mount,
tents were erected for the people of distinction, and
officers of the court. About two hundred yards from
it, we were lodged in some clean huts, covered with
reeds. The Emperor, from his situation, had a view
of all the tents, and a great way farther into the fo-
rest. The whole scene made a very pretty appearance.

As soon as we alighted, the master of the ceremo-
nies was sent, by the Emperor, to ask the ambassador
how he liked their manner of hunting. He made a
suitable return, acknowledging, at the same time, the
great honour done him on this occasion.

The Emperor then sent us great plenty of dressed
provisions of all kinds; and the officer, who brought
them, pointed out several dishes, which his Majesty
sent from his own table, consisting of mutton, venison,
pheasants, and other sorts of wild fowl.

After

After dinner, the Emperor sent two of his chief eunuchs to compliment the ambaffador ; and inform him, that he intended to entertain him with the baiting of three tigers, which had been kept some time, cooped up in a ftrong grate-work, for that purpofe. The hill, where the Emperor's tent flood, was furrounded with feveral ranks of guards, armed with long fpears. A guard, alfo, was placed before the ambaffador's, and the reft of the tents, to fecure the whole encampment from the fury of thefe fierce animals. The firft was let out by a perfon mounted on a fleet horfe, who opened the door of the coop by means of a rope tied to it. The tiger immediately left his cage, and feemed much pleafed to find himfelf at liberty. The horfeman rode off at full fpeed ; while the tiger was rolling himfelf upon the grafs. At laft he rofe, and growled, and walked about. The Emperor fired twice at him with bullets ; but, the diftance being confiderable, miffed him, though the pieces were well pointed. Upon which his Majefty fent to the ambaffador, to try his piece upon him ; which being charged with a fingle ball, he walked towards the animal, accompanied by ten men, armed with fpears, in

CHAP. XL. case of accidents; till, being at a convenient distance,
 1721. he took his aim, and killed him on the spot.

The second was let out in the same manner. The horseman, retiring a little, left the creature rolling upon the grass, like the first. He then returned, and shot at him with a blunted arrow; which roused the animal to such a pitch, and made him pursue so closely, that the horseman narrowly escaped within the ranks, where the furious tiger, endeavouring to leap over the men's heads, was killed at the foot of the mount.

The third, as soon as he was set at liberty, run directly towards the Emperor's tent; and was, in like manner, killed with the spears. A man must be well mounted and armed, who hunts this kind of animals in the woods; where they must be much stronger and swifter than these we saw, which had been confined for many months, and whose limbs, by want of exercise, were become stiff and unwieldy; but, notwithstanding this disadvantage, the courage and nimbleness even of these animals was very surprising. I have seen four sorts of them, the tiger, panther, leopard, and lynx, which are all very fierce; but the first is the largest and strongest.

The Emperor, in his youth, was very fond of hunting these creatures in the woods of TARTARY; but,

now,

now, he confines himself within the limits of the forest, where there is game sufficient to gratify any sportsman. CHAP. XI.
1721.

The killing of the tigers finished the diversion of the day; after which we retired to our huts, where we were entertained with a plentiful supper, sent us by the Emperor. After supper, an officer was sent from his Majesty to the ambassador, who brought the tiger's skin he had shot; telling him, that, by the laws of hunting, he had a right to it.

Next morning, the sport was resumed, and varied little from that of the preceding day. About three o'clock, afternoon, we came to another summer-house, in the middle of the forest, where the Emperor lodged the following night; while we lay in a small neat temple in the neighbourhood; and were entertained, by his Majesty, in the same manner as before.

The 23d, about eight of the clock in the morning, the master of the ceremonies waited on the ambassador, in order to conduct him into his Majesty's presence, to receive his audience of leave. The Emperor received him, in a most friendly manner, in his bed-chamber. He repeated his assurances of the great friendship he entertained for his Czarish Majesty; and

CHAP. XI. expressed great respect for the personal merit of the
1721. ambaffador. After which the ambaffador took leave;
and we returned to our lodgings in the city.

I shall only observe further, that this forest is really a most delightful place; is well stored with variety of game; and is of great extent, as will easily be conceived from the account I have given of our two days hunting. It is all inclosed with a high wall of brick. The value of this park, so near the capital, shows the magnificence of this powerful monarch.

The 24th, the ambaffador was invited, by the president of the college of mathematicks, to see the observatory; which is situated immediately within the east wall, and commands an extensive prospect. The building is not magnificent; but is furnished with a fine armillary sphere, globes, telescopes, an orrery in good order, and other mathematical instruments of the best EUROPEAN workmanship. This college was erected by the present Emperor, who spares no cost to bring it to perfection; and the meanest of his subjects, who discover a genius for science, or any useful art, are sure to meet with due encouragement.

The CHINESE are indebted to the present Emperor for what progress they have made in astronomy. He chiefly

chiefly promoted this study by countenancing the JE- CHAP. XI.
SUITS and other missionaries; for I have been inform- 1721.
ed, that, before their arrival in this country, the inhabitants could scarcely calculate an eclipse. The CHINESE, it is indeed pretended, understood astronomy previous to that period; but the knowledge of it was in a great measure lost, during the many fatal revolutions of the empire.

From the observatory we ascended, by a broad rising passage, to the top of the city-wall; where we saw about fifteen horsemen riding their rounds; which, we were told, they performed day and night, at stated times. The wall is built of brick, and is about twenty-five or thirty feet high; having embrasures, and square towers, at equal distances; and a wide deep ditch, which may be filled with water at pleasure. On the top of the wall there is a pleasant walk, broad enough for fifteen horsemen to ride a-breast. I suppose the whole is, perhaps, not composed of solid bricks, but the middle filled up with earth and rubbish.

The 25th, we went to all the three convents, and took leave of our friends the missionaries.

The 26th, the ambassador went to the tribunal for foreign affairs, and received a letter from the Emperor

CHAP. XI. to his Czarish Majesty. On this occasion the president acquainted his excellency, that he must consider this letter as a singular mark of favour to his master, as their Emperors were not in use to write letters of compliment to any prince; or, indeed, to write letters of any kind, except those which contained their orders to their subjects; and, that the Emperor dispensed with so material a custom, only, to testify his respect for his Czarish Majesty.

The original of this letter was in the CHINESE language, and a copy of it in the MONGALIAN. It was folded up in a long roll, according to the custom in CHINA, and wrapped in a piece of yellow silk, which was tied to a man's arm, and carried, in procession, before the ambassador. All persons on horseback, whom we met, dismounted, and stood till we had passed them. Such veneration do these people pay to every thing belonging to the Emperor.

The same day, the ambassador had a visit from a young gentleman, a descendent of the famous CHINESE philosopher CONFUCIUS; whose memory and works are greatly respected in CHINA. From what I could learn of this eminent philosopher, he appears to have been a person of extraordinary parts, extensive know-

knowledge, and exemplary virtue. On account of such rare qualities, his family is still honoured and esteemed even by the Emperor himself. CHAP. XII.
1721.

C H A P T E R X I I .

Some account of the present Emperor of CHINA, the CHINESE wall, &c.

BEFORE we leave CHINA, I shall make a few general remarks, on the people and country, drawn from the best information I could procure; and shall begin with the long wall.

The long, or endless wall, as it is commonly called, encompasses all the north and west parts of CHINA. It was built, about six hundred years ago, by one of the Emperors, to prevent the frequent incursions of the MONGALLS, and other western TARTARS, who made a practice of assembling numerous troops of horse, and invading the country in different places. The CHINESE frontiers were too extensive to be guarded against such bold and numerous enemies; who, after plundering and destroying a wealthy country, returned to their own, loaded with spoils.

The CHINESE finding all precautions ineffectual to

put

CHAP. XII. put a stop to the inroads of such barbarians, at last
1721. resolved to build this famous wall. It begins in the
province of LEOTONG, at the bottom of the bay of
NANKIN; and proceeds a-cross rivers, and over the
tops of the highest mountains, without interruption,
keeping nearly along the circular ridge of barren rocks
that surround the country to the north and west; and,
after running southwards about twelve hundred EN-
GLISH miles, ends in impassable mountains and sandy
deserts.

The foundation consists of large blocks of square
stones laid in mortar; but the rest of the wall is built
of brick. The whole is so strong, and well built, as
to need almost no repair; and, in such a dry climate,
may remain in this condition for many ages. It's
height and breadth are not equal in every place; nor,
indeed, is it necessary they should. When carried over
steep rocks, where no horse can pass, it is about fifteen
or twenty feet high, and broad in proportion; but,
when running through a valley, or crossing a river,
there you see a strong wall, about thirty feet high, with
square towers, at the distance of a bow-shot from one
another, and embrasures at equal distances. The top
of the wall is flat, and paved with broad free-stone;
and

and where it rises over a rock, or any eminence, you CHAP. XII.
ascend by a fine easy stone-stair. 1721.

The bridges, over rivers and torrents, are exceedingly neat, being both well contrived and executed. They have two stories of arches, one above another, to afford sufficient passage for the waters on sudden rains and floods.

This wall was begun and completely finished in the space of five years; every sixth man in CHINA being obliged to work himself, or find another in his stead. It is reported, the labourers stood so close, for many miles distance, as to hand the materials from one to another. This I am the more inclined to believe, as the rugged rocks would prevent all use of carriages; nor could clay, for making bricks or cement, of any kind, be found among them.

The building of this wall, however, was not the only burden the CHINESE supported, on this occasion. They were also obliged to keep a numerous army in the field, to guard the passes of the mountains, and secure the labourers from being interrupted by their watchful enemies the TARTARS, who, all the while, were not idle spectators.

I am of opinion, that no nation in the world was

CHAP. XII. able for such an undertaking, except the CHINESE. For,

^{1721.}
though some other kingdom might have furnished a sufficient number of workmen, for such an enterprize, none but the ingenious, sober, and parsimonious CHINESE could have preserved order amidst such multitudes, or patiently submitted to the hardships attending such a labour. This surprising piece of work, if not the greatest, may justly be reckoned among the wonders of the world. And the Emperor, who planned and completed it, deserves fame, as much superior to his who built the famous EGYPTIAN pyramids, as a performance of real use excels a work of vanity.

Besides the main wall, there are several semicircular walls, which have the long wall for their diameter, at the places least fortified by nature, and at the open passes of the mountains. These are strongly built, of the same materials and architecture with the long wall, and are of considerable extent, sometimes on one side of the main wall, and sometimes on the other. In these walls are strong gates, constantly defended by a numerous guard. They are intended to prevent a surprise, and stop sudden irruptions of the enemy. Even these lesser bulwarks seem works of great expence and labour; but nothing in comparison with the long wall.

After

After the CHINESE had finished their wall, they had CHAP. XII.
respite for a considerable time, from the invasions of 1721.
their enemies, reaping the fruits of their labour in
peace and quietness. However, about five hundred
years ago, the western TARTARS found means to get
through the wall, and, with a powerful army of horse,
entered the country, carrying terror along with them
wherever they went. They, at last, became masters of
the greatest part of CHINA, and kept possession of it for
many years, till the CHINESE, exasperated by their ty-
ranny, took advantage of their negligence, and drove
them back, with disgrace, to their ancient habitations
in the deserts. The CHINESE now began to re-establish
their former government, to rectify disorders, and re-
pair desolations made by the TARTARS. From this
time they enjoyed long peace, till the fatal year one
thousand six hundred and forty, when the MANTZUR
TARTARS conquered the whole empire of CHINA; which
conquest they retain to this day; and, by their prudent
management and mild government, seem in a fair way
to keep it.

I shall briefly relate in what manner this strange re-
volution was brought about, by so small a nation as the
MANTZURS; a people whom the CHINESE despised, and

CHAP. XII. who bear no greater proportion to the CHINESE than
1721. the inhabitants of WALES to the rest of GREAT BRI-
TAIN.

It happened, during a time of profound peace, that a certain prince of MANTZUR, going to fetch his bride, from a place bordering on the province of LEOTONG, was, without provocation, attacked by a party of CHINESE, and slain, with most of his attendants; against all laws of justice and good neighbourhood.

The TARTARS, though highly exasperated, behaved with uncommon moderation on this occasion. Before proceeding to make reprisals, or taking any step whatever with that view, they sent ambassadors, to the court of PEKIN, demanding satisfaction for the outrage committed upon one of their princes. Their complaints were neglected, and the matter, under various pretences, delayed, from time to time, till the TARTARS, losing all patience, and positively insisting on an answer to their demands, were affronted, and contemptuously dismissed by the CHINESE ministry, to whom the Emperor had referred them. This treatment highly enraged the whole race of the TARTARS; who immediately vowed revenge; and, having got an army together, entered

tered the province of LEOTONG, which lies without the wall, wasting all with fire and sword. CHAP. XII.
1721.

Besides this war with the TARTARS, several other circumstances concurred to bring about a revolution in the empire; for, at the same time, there happened a great insurrection in CHINA, which, at last, became general. The rebels were commanded by one named LI; who, after having defeated the imperial army sent to oppose him, invested and took PEKIN itself. And the Emperor, rather than fall into the hands of his furious subjects, first hanged his daughter, and then himself, on a tree in his own garden.

The Emperor's general, USANGUE, still kept the field with the small remains of his troops; but altogether unable to resist the powerful army of the rebels. He therefore retired northwards; and, all hopes of success being lost, came to a resolution of calling in the TARTARS to his assistance. He promised them many rewards, and, particularly, the province of LEOTONG; if, by their aid, he succeeded in forcing the rebels to obedience. KUM-TI, the TARTAR chief, readily hearkened to the proposal, and the terms were soon settled between the parties.

In consequence of this agreement, the new allies
joined

CHAP. XII. joined armies, which were both commanded by the
 1721. TARTAR, and advanced towards the long wall. But,
 before they reached the gate, KUM-TI, the TARTAR
 Prince, died, and left his son XUNGSTI, a child of seven
 years of age, for his successor. This accident did
 not retard the progress of the expedition; for this child
 was left to the guardianship of his uncle; a man of
 great abilities and address, and perfectly qualified to
 conduct the important project then on foot.

Immediately after the death of KUM-TI, the young
 Prince was proclaimed King of the MANTZURS, and
 commander in chief of the combined army of TARTARS
 and CHINESE. In order to magnify the number of
 TARTARS in the army, and consequently render them-
 selves more formidable to the rebels, they luckily fell
 upon a stratagem; which was, to dress all the CHINESE
 soldiers in TARTAR habits. And, at entering the wall,
 the real TARTARS, in the army, did not exceed eight
 thousand men; though, indeed, they were followed by
 strong reinforcements.

When they arrived at the wall, the CHINESE, who
 kept guard, seeing a child at the head of such an army,
 which they imagined to consist wholly of TARTARS,
 were so surprised, that they immediately opened the
 gates,

gates, without the least resistance, crying out, long live CHAP. XII. the Emperor. This circumstance, added to the re-^{1721.}ports of so formidable an army of TARTARS, increasing daily by reinforcements, struck such terror into the rebels, that many of them forsook their leader. The TARTARS still advanced, and had daily skirmishes and several battles with the rebels, in which the latter were defeated. In the mean time, the guardian took care to leave garrisons in all the towns through which they passed, with strict orders, to use the inhabitants with the greatest humanity. Such mild behaviour gained the affection of the nation in general. And thus he proceeded, from one province to another, till the whole empire submitted to his jurisdiction.

The war, which had lasted some years, being now at an end, and peace re-established, the CHINESE thanked the TARTARS for their good services, and desired they would return to their own country. But the TARTAR chief, on various pretences, delayed his departure, till such time as he found his party sufficiently strong to fix his nephew, XUNGSTI, on the imperial throne of CHINA.

XUNGSTI died a young man, and left his second son, KAMHI, to succeed him. On finding himself at the point

CHAP. XII. point of death, he called for his eldest son, and asked
^{1721.} him, whether he would take upon him the govern-
ment? but, being young and modest, he was unwilling
to accept, and begged his father would excuse him
on that account. Then KAMHI was called, and asked
the same question. He was better instructed, and
briskly answered, he was ready to obey his father's
commands, and would take the weight of the govern-
ment upon him. This answer so pleased the Emperor,
that he named him his successor; and, accordingly, on
the death of his father, he was proclaimed Emperor;
and his behaviour has shown him altogether worthy of
that honour. It is, it seems, agreeable to the laws and
customs of CHINA, that the Emperor chuse, for his suc-
cessor, which of his sons he pleases without regard to
primogeniture.

Although the Emperor's name is KAMHI, the west-
ern TARTARS call him BOGHDOY-CHAN, signifying chief
governor; but the CHINESE, in talking of him, say VAN-
SUY, which signifies, many times ten thousand years;
meaning, let the Emperor live so long. This is a high
title in the ORIENTAL phrase. His sons are called
VAN, signifying ten thousand years; and are distin-
guished

guished by the names of VAN the first, VAN the second, &c. according to their age.

CHAP. XII.

1721.

KAMHI, the present Emperor, has about twenty sons, and, it is said, he intends the fourteenth for his successor. He is a prince eminent for prudence and valour; and had, at this time, the command of an army against the KALMUCKS.

KAMHI hath yet the remains of a graceful person. His countenance is open, his disposition generous, and he gives great application to business; qualities absolutely necessary to manage the great affairs with which he is intrusted. His reign has been long and prosperous, though sometimes disturbed by dangerous insurrections, and open rebellions; but his good fortune, and prudent conduct, overcoming all difficulties, restored publick tranquillity, and he has now, for a considerable time, enjoyed perfect peace and happiness. Although the government of CHINA is absolute, it requires no small sagacity and skill to rule an empire of such extensive dominions, and containing so numerous subjects.

After KAMHI had settled his affairs at home, the first step he took was to gain the western or MONGALL TARTARS to his friendship. The CHINESE had no enemies so formidable. The Emperor knew their va-

CHAP. XII. 1721.  lour, and had employed many of them in his army, who did him signal services on many occasions. To effect this, he began to form alliances with their princes and chiefs, by inter-marriages between their families and his, where these could take place; others he allured by rich presents; so that they are, at present, little better than his subjects. And, by this masterpiece of politicks, he succeeded more effectually than if he had employed the whole force of CHINA. The friendship of the western TARTARS is of great importance to the Emperor; for they not only supply PEKIN with provisions, the produce of their flocks; but, upon any emergency, can bring to his assistance fifty thousand horse, on a short warning.

It may easily be imagined, that great armies and strict discipline are necessary to guard so extensive territories, and keep such a numerous people to their duty. The number of soldiers, reported to be in the empire, is prodigious, and almost incredible. I am well informed that the single province and city of PEKIN contain no less than one hundred and twenty thousand effective men, all well paid, cloathed, and armed.

Notwithstanding the vast revenues which are necessary for the support of the government, the duties on inland

inland trade must be very easy; for I was told by a CHAP. XII. merchant, that he could live in the capital, and trade 1721. in what branches of business he pleased, for paying only one ounce of silver annually to the Emperor. Such easy taxes show the great oeconomy and moderation of KAMHI, whose reign is called the reign of great peace and rest; in CHINESE *Tay-ping*.

The TARTARS call CHINA KITAY, and the people KITAYTZI; but the CHINESE call themselves CHUM-QUOTIGEN, that is, the people of the middle region.

The empire of CHINA is, in a manner, separated from all the rest of the world; situated in a fine and healthy climate, surrounded by the ocean to the east and south; by a chain of high rocks and barren mountains on the north and west, along which runs the famous wall as an additional defence. But what, in my opinion, is a greater security to the empire against invaders, than any thing yet mentioned, is the barren desert, stretching for several hundred miles westward, where none but TARTARS can subsist, and which scarce any regular army can pass. The seas, to the south and east, are, indeed, open; and CHINA might be attacked on that side; but, I am persuaded, no prince will think it proper to disturb his own repose, and that

CHAP. XII. of such a powerful people, inclined to peace with all
 1721. their neighbours; and satisfied, as they seem, with their
 own dominions.

I know but one nation who could attempt the conquest of CHINA, with any probability of success, and that is RUSSIA; but the territories of that empire are so extensive, in this quarter of the world, as to exceed even the bounds of ambition itself; and the RUSSIANS seem to entertain no desire of extending them farther.

What part of CHINA I saw is mostly plain, interspersed with hills and rising grounds. The whole is pleasant and well cultivated, producing wheat and other grain, together with abundance of cattle and poultry.

Besides the necessaries, the CHINESE have also many of the superfluities of life; particularly, fine fruits, of various kinds, too tedious to mention. They have likewise mines of gold, silver, copper, lead, and iron. They set a greater value on silver, in proportion to gold, than the EUROPEANS do; so that gold is exported to good advantage.

In CHINA are many navigable rivers, and canals, cut to great distances, for the convenience of water-carriage.

age. The merchants are immensely rich by their in-
land and foreign trade, which they carry on, to great
extent, with the RUSSIANS and TARTARS; besides the
vast sums of money they receive annually from the EU-
ROPEANS, in exchange for tea, CHINA-ware, and other
merchandise. The trade also to JAPAN, and the neigh-
bouring islands, is very considerable. What is most
remarkable in their payments, is, that they receive on-
ly dollars, crown and half-crown pieces; undervaluing
smaller coins, of equal weight and standard, though
they melt all down directly into bars of different sizes.

Tea is universally used, at all times, and by persons of
all ranks. Both the green and bohea grow on the same
tree, or rather shrub, called by the CHINESE tzay. The
green tea is called tzin tzay, and the bohea ouy-tzay.
When the leaves are gathered, at the proper season,
they are put into large kettles, and dried over a gentle
fire; which makes them crumple up, and prevents their
crumbling to dust; which they would infallibly do,
without this precaution.

What is designed for bohea, is mixed, in drying,
with the juice of a certain plant, which gives it the co-
lour and flavour, and qualifies that sharpness, which, in
constant drinking, is hurtful to some tender constitu-
tions.

CHAP. XII. tions. The cultivating, gathering, dressing, and pack-
 1721. ing of this useful plant, must employ a great number
 of hands ; and particularly, of old and young people, who would be unfit for harder labour.

The high rates, at which tea is sold in EUROPE, are a little surprising, considering the prices in CHINA. For, at PEKIN, the price of the best tea, either green or bohea, is half an ounce of silver the CHINESE pound; which is equal to what it would be at two shillings a pound in ENGLAND. And allowing the freight and duties to be high, yet the profits seem somewhat extravagant. I shall only add, on this subject, that the tea, commonly sold at PEKIN, is preferable, in quality, to what is imported to EUROPE from CANTON; and, that the CHINESE drink it without sugar, though sugar is a produce of the country, and consequently very cheap.

Several of the CHINESE manufactures are brought to great perfection; especially that of weaving silk, damasks, and other stuffs; which are partly worn by the natives, and partly exported. Silks are the common dress, of the better sort of people, of both sexes; and coarse cotton-cloth that of the lower class. They use almost no woollen cloths; because, they say, in their
 climate

climate they gather too much dust. They have great abundance of raw silk. They make no muslins, nor fine chints; neither are these much used. CHAP. XII.
1721.

The CHINESE, it is well known, are excellent performers in several mechanic arts; particularly, as potters, dyers, japanners, joiners, and paper-makers. In the article of paper-making they excel even the EUROPEANS.

Their workmanship in metals is but clumsy; except only founding, at which they are very expert. The arts of statuary, sculpture, and painting, have made but small progress among them. They have excellent water-colours of all sorts, but none in oil. The chief study of their painters seems to be landskip-painting; and I have seen some of their performances, in this way, very natural.

They have many quarries of fine marble, of different colours; but not so much as a single statue is to be seen in the Emperor's garden.

The making of clocks and watches was lately introduced, under the protection of the present Emperor; who, at his leisure hours, amuses himself with whatever is curious either in art or nature.

The CHINESE are a civilized and hospitable people;
com-

CHAP. XII. complaisant to strangers, and to one another; very regular in their manners and behaviour, and respectful to their superiors; but, above all, their regard for their parents, and decent treatment of their women of all ranks, ought to be imitated, and deserve great praise. These good qualities are a natural consequence of the sobriety, and uniformity of life, to which they have been long accustomed.

The general regularity, and decency of manners, among the CHINESE, is obvious to all who see and observe them with the least attention. And, as they are singular, in many things, beyond most other nations; they are so, likewise, in this point of polity, which I cannot omit taking notice of in my transient remarks.

It may easily be imagined, that, in so populous a city, there must be many idle persons of both sexes; though, I believe, fewer than in most other cities of the world, even in those of much less extent than that of PEKIN. In order to prevent all disorderly practices, as much as possible, the government have thought fit to permit, or connive at, certain places, in the suburbs, for the reception and entertainment of prostitutes, who are maintained by the landlords of the houses in which they dwell; but not allowed to straggle abroad.

I have

I have been informed, that these ladies of pleasure have CHAP. XII. all separate apartments; with the price of each lady, ^{1721.} describing, at the same time, her beauties and qualities, written, over the door of her apartment, in fair legible characters; which price is paid directly by the gallant; by which means, these affairs are conducted without noise in the houses, or disturbances in the neighbourhood. Noisy brawls are very seldom, hardly ever, known at PEKIN; those who are found offending, in this way, undergo very severe penalties. It is likewise to be observed, that these houses are calculated for the meaner sort of people only; so that any person, who hath the least regard to his credit or reputation, carefully avoids being seen in them.

I must, however, take notice of one shocking and unnatural practice; which appears more extraordinary in a country so well regulated and governed as CHINA. I mean, that of exposing so many new-born infants in the streets. This, indeed, is only done by the poor, who have more wives than they can maintain. To prevent the death of these children, there are publick hospitals appointed for their reception, and people sent out through the streets, every morning, to pick up, and carry thither, such children as they find exposed. The

CHAP. XII. missionaries also send out people to take up such as
^{1721.} have been neglected, who are carried to a private
hospital, maintained at their charge, and educated in
the CHRISTIAN religion. And of such persons do the
greatest part of the CHINESE CHRISTIANS consist.

I shall now make a few remarks upon the ladies,
who have many good qualities besides their beauty.
They are very cleanly, and modest in their dress. Their
eyes are black, and so little, that, when they laugh,
you can scarce see them. Their hair is black as jet,
and neatly tied up, in a knot, on the crown of the
head, adorned with artificial flowers of their own mak-
ing; which are very becoming. The better sort, who
are seldom exposed to the air, have good complexions.
Those who are inclined to the olive, take care to add
a touch of white and red paint, which they apply very
nicely.

The ladies of distinction are seldom permitted to
stir abroad, except to visit their nearest relations; and,
on these occasions, they are always carried in close
chairs, and attended by their servants. The women
of all ranks stay pretty much at home. The small-
ness of their feet, which renders them unable to walk
to any considerable distance, makes their confinement
less.

less disagreeable. As soon as a girl comes into the world, they bind her tender feet with tight bandages, which are renewed as occasion requires, to prevent their growing. This custom prevails universally, the TARTAR ladies, residing in CHINA, only excepted, who appear to have no inclination to conform to this fashion.

This fashion was introduced into CHINA by a great Princess, who lived some ages ago. She was a lady of extraordinary beauty and virtue, and has obtained the reputation of a saint; but, it is reported, her feet resembled those of birds; on which account she kept them always carefully wrapped up, and concealed even from the Emperor her husband. The ladies of the court followed her example; which, of course, soon became general. The CHINESE women never pare their nails; but suffer them to grow to the full length. This proves no impediment in embroidery, and other needle-work, in which they are constantly employed. These they finish with extraordinary neatness, as fully appears from some specimens of them brought to EUROPE.

The CHINESE deserve great praise for their patience in finishing, completely, every thing they undertake. And, what is still a greater recommendation, their la-

CHAP. XII. bours are not the effect of whim or caprice, but cal-

1721.  culated to serve some useful purpose. The publick works, about the city of PEKIN, are instances of these observations. The streets, in particular, are the finest in the world. They are spacious, neat, and straight. The canals, which supply the city with water, have, at proper distances, commodious stone-bridges over them; and these canals are not only built with free-stone, on the sides, but the bottoms of them paved with broad cut-stones, in the neatest manner imaginable. There are but few springs of soft water in PEKIN. And the water, in general, though a little brackish, is by no means unwholesome.

The CHINESE are generally of a middle size, and slender make; but very active. They are honest, and observe the strictest honour and justice in their dealings. It must, however, be acknowledged, that not a few of them are much addicted to knavery, and well skilled in the arts of cheating. They have, indeed, found many EUROPEANS as great proficients in that art as themselves. And if you once cheat them, they are sure to retaliate on the first opportunity.

As to the religion of the CHINESE, I cannot pretend to give a distinct account of it. According to the best infor-

information I could procure, they are divided into several sects; among which, that of the Theists is the most rational and respectable. They worship one GOD, whom they call TIEN, the Heaven or the highest Lord, and pay no religious homage to the images of their countrymen. This sect has subsisted for many ages longer than CHRISTIANITY, and is still most in vogue; being embraced by the Emperor himself, and most of the grandees, and men of learning. The common people are generally idolaters. The few JEWS and MAHOMETANS, residing here, are supposed to have entered CHINA about six or seven hundred years ago, in company with the western TARTARS. There is a very inconsiderable sect, called Cross-worshippers. They worship the holy cross; but have lost all other marks of CHRISTIANITY; which makes it probable the gospel was preached in this country before the arrival of the missionaries; but by whom is uncertain. The CHRISTIANS, at present, are computed to amount to one hundred thousand, of both sexes. I have been told, the CHINESE have also some Atheists among them.

I had several opportunities of talking with their physicians. They, generally, both prepare and administer their own prescriptions, and are very little acquainted

CHAP. XII. acquainted with the medicinal system practised in EUROPE. As they have but few chymical preparations, their chief study is the virtues of plants, which they apply on all occasions, and often with success. They feel the patient's pulse for four or five minutes, and very seldom let blood, even in high fevers. They compare a fever to a boiling pot, and chuse rather to take the fire from it than diminish the quantity of liquor it contains, which would only make it boil the faster. Bathing and cupping are much practised; and they even apply fire in some cases, particularly for pains in the joints, and gouty disorders. On these occasions they apply a lighted match, composed of the downy substance that grows on mugwort, to the part affected; which, making a scar, either entirely removes or considerably mitigates the pain.

I cannot but take notice, on this occasion, of a famous plant, called gingfing, which grows in the province of LEOTONG. The root of this plant is so much esteemed for its physical virtues, that it is gathered by people, appointed by the Emperor, for this purpose only; and is valued at the rate of about twenty five pounds Sterling the pound weight. It is so rare, that the Emperor sent two pounds of it only in a present

to his Czarish Majesty. There are two sorts of it; one CHAP. XII. looks as if candied; the other like small parsley roots, ^{1721.} and has something of the same taste. They slice down or pound it; and, after infusion and slight boiling, give it to the patient. I could never learn from their physicians, what specific qualities this plant possessed, only that it was of universal use. I have heard many stories of strange cures performed by it; that persons, seemingly dead, have, by its means, been restored to health. I believe, indeed, it may be a good restorative plant; but, if it really has any extraordinary virtues, I could never discover them, though I have made many experiments on it, at different times. I should imagine this rare plant might be cultivated, with success, in the country where it grows naturally; and it appears improbable the CHINESE would neglect such a sovereign remedy.

The great men in CHINA follow the example of the western ASIATICS, in keeping eunuchs to attend them; who are their counsellors, and chief confidants, on all occasions. Their business is to take care of the women; and, being in a manner detached from the world, they are much respected. Castrating is a trade in CHINA; and so skilful and dexterous are the performers.

CHAP. XII. mers that few die under their hands. I knew a man,
 1721. who, being reduced to low circumstances, sold himself
 to be made a eunuch, after he was thirty years of age.

The language of the CHINESE is composed chiefly of monosyllables, and, seems to me, easily acquired; at least as much of it as is sufficient for conversation. The difficulty of learning their letters, or rather marks for words, cannot be so great as is commonly represented; for you scarce meet a common hawker who cannot read and write what belongs to his calling. It requires, indeed, much labour, and considerable abilities, to acquire the character of a learned man in CHINA.

I have mentioned above a few only of their manufactures. I cannot omit taking notice of their paper, which is made both of silk and cotton, and is remarkably clean and smooth. They had been in possession of this art, for many ages, before they had any intercourse with the EUROPEANS, as appears from their records. Their sheets are made larger than any I ever saw in EUROPE; and, though they generally write with hair pencils, I have seen CHINESE paper that bore our pens and ink very well.

Their ink, called *touss*, is well known to our painters and designers. I was told, the chief ingredient in
 it

it, is the burnt bones of animals. They have several CHAP. XII.
 sorts of it; but the best is very cheap, and is made up ^{1721.}
 in pastes of various figures, stamped with characters or
 letters. It is generally put up in little flat boxes, some-
 times double the value of the ink they contain.

I shall here insert a specimen of CHINESE numbers,
 and a few capital words, with those of several other
 ASIATIC nations.

CHINESE numbers.

1	Iga.	16	Shileoga.
2	Langa.	17	Shiziga.
3	Sanga.	18	Shifpaga.
4	Siga.	19	Shizuga.
5	Uga.	20	Shielga.
6	Leoga.	30	Shinshiga.
7	Tziga.	40	Tzeziga.
8	Paga.	50	Ushiga.
9	Tziuga.	60	Leoshiga.
10	Shiga.	70	Tzishiga.
11	Shiyga.	80	Pashiga.
12	Shierga.	90	Tzioshiga.
13	Shifenga.	100	Ibay.
14	Shifga.	1000	Itzen.
15	Shiuga.	10000	Van.

CHAP. XII. A specimen of ENGLISH and CHINESE words.

1721.

God	Foy.	Wind	Fung.
The heavens	Tien.	Rain	Eu.
The earth	Tiye.	Good	Cho.
The sun	Shilo.	Bad	Pu.
The moon	Jualang.	A good friend	Cho-pung-yu.
The stars	Tzifing.	Farewell	Manfay-lea.
The devil	Kuy.	Fire	Choa.
Water	Shuy.	Bread	Bobon.

The MANTZUR's numbers.

1	Emu.	6	Nynguin.
2	Dio.	7	Naadan.
3	Ilan.	8	Iaachun.
4	Tuin.	9	Une.
5	Suindja.	10	Ioan, &c.

The MONGALL's numbers, and some of their words.

1	Neggea.	9	Juffu.
2	Choir.	10	Arba.
3	Gurba.	11	Arba-neggea.
4	Dirbu.	12	Arba-Choir.
5	Tabu.	13	Arba-gurba.
6	Zurga.	14	Arba-dirbu.
7	Dolo.	15	Arba-tabu.
8	Nauma.	16	Arba-zurga.

17	Arba-dolo.	100	Dzo.
18	Arba-nauma.	1000	Minga.
19	Arba-juffu.	10000	Tumea.
20	Choiry.	God	Burchan.
30	Gutshy.	The heavens	Tengery.
40	Dutshy.	The earth	Gadzar.
50	Taby.	The sun	Narra.
60	Dira.	The moon	Shara.
70	Dala.	The stars	Odu.
80	Naya.	The clouds	Ulea.
90	Irea.		

The TANGUT's numbers.

1	Dgi.	6	Duk.
2	Née.	7	Dunn.
3	Sum.	8	Dja.
4	Che.	9	Gu.
5	Gno.	10	Dju-tamba, &c.

Numbers of INDOSTAN.

1	Eck.	6	Tzo.
2	Duy.	7	Tateé.
3	Tin.	8	Aatfa.
4	Tzar.	9	Nouy.
5	Penge.	10	Dafs, &c.

CHAP. XII. The people of INDOSTAN have little or no correspondence with CHINA; being separated from it by impassable mountains and barren deserts. They call CHINA by the name of KITAT; and the Emperor, Amola-Chan.

The INDIANS call RUSSIA OLT.

The first great Lama, or high Priest, near the borders of INDIA, is called Beyngin-Bogdu; and hath his residence at a place called DIGERDA.

The second is the Delay-Lama, residing at LAHASSAR; the INDIANS call him Tamtzy-Kenna. From DIGERDA to LAHASSAR is a month's journey on foot.

The third is the Kutuchtu, called by the INDIANS Tarranat, who resides at the URGa, not far from SELINGINSKY.

The present Great Mogul is called SHEYHALIM PATISHA. The INDIAN married priests are the Brachmans; their monks are called Atheits, and their military men Resput.

The INDIAN and TANGUT numbers, together with these few notes, I had from the Faquir, at SELINGINSKY; who told me, that the greatest penance that could be imposed on any of their order, was a pilgrimage to visit these three high priests. Though I have hinted

hinted something concerning them, during my stay at CHAP. XII.
 SELINGINSKY, yet, as I shall have no opportunity in 1721.
 future to learn any thing more about those great men,
 I think it will not be unacceptable that I have inserted
 the foregoing short notes.

I had, from my early youth, a strong inclination to visit the eastern parts of the world; and providence afforded me an opportunity, far beyond my expectations, of gratifying my curiosity in the most ample manner. For never, perhaps, were those countries in a more flourishing condition than under the famous Emperors, KAMHI and PETER the first; and, perhaps, such another conjuncture of circumstances may not happen for several ages. I have now finished my account of the observations I made during my residence in CHINA; and, had we returned by the same route we went eastward, I should here conclude my journal; but, as our route was different in many places, particularly, in our passage, by water, from SELINGINSKY to TOBOLSKY, I shall proceed to make my remarks on such places and things, only, as I have hitherto had no opportunity of mentioning.

C H A P T E R XIII.

Our departure from PEKIN, Occurrences, &c. during our journey back towards MOSCO.

MARCH 2d, we sent off our heavy baggage, early in the morning; and, about noon, left the fine city of PEKIN, accompanied by several CHINESE gentlemen, who were to return with Mr. de LANGE, whom his Czarish Majesty had appointed to remain, as his agent, at the court of PEKIN. In the evening we reached a large town, called SANGPINGJU, where we lodged.

The 4th, Mr. de LANGE and our friends returned to the city, and we continued our journey. I have already mentioned most of the remarkable towns through which we passed; and, as little happened on the road worth notice, I shall only observe, that we were entertained, by the governors, in the same hospitable manner as before.

The 9th, we arrived at KALGAN, the last town of any note, and about three miles distant from the long wall. We staid here two days, in order to provide bread, rice, and other provisions, for our journey over the HUNGRY DESERT.

Next

Next day, the governor waited on the ambaffador, CHAP. XIII. and invited him to fee fome CHINESE troops perform 1721. their exercife. We accordingly walked into an adjacent field, where we found about four thoufand infantry drawn up in fix lines. All their guns had matchlocks. The field-officers were on horfeback, armed with bows and arrows; but the fubalterns on foot, having fpears, longer or shorter, according to their rank. All the troops kept a profound filence, till the commanding officer ordered the fignal to be given for beginning the exercife; which was done by firing a fmall gun, mounted on the back of a camel. Upon this fignal, they advanced, retreated, and performed their evolutions, according to the difcipline of the country, in a very regular manner. After finifhing this exercife, the whole corps, at laft, divided itfelf into companies of fifty men each; and, kneeling as clofe to one another as poffible, continued in this pofture for fome minutes; they then rofe, and, running to their former ftations, quickly formed themfelves, without the leaft confufion. From what I obferved of their motions, I am of opinion they might eafily be taught any exercife whatever.

The 12th, we arrived at the gates of the main wall, which

CHAP. XIII. which we found open. Here the commander, and several officers of the guard, met us, and invited the ambassador to walk into the guard-room, and drink a dish of tea. After this repast we proceeded a few miles farther; but, as it was too late to get over the mountains that night, we took up our quarters at a village where we had lodged in going to PEKIN.

Next morning early we left the village; and travelled along the banks of a torrent, which runs through a narrow valley, between the mountains. For conveniency of the road we crossed this rivulet several times. The weather was very fine and warm, and the face of the country extremely pleasant. On the sides of the rocks we saw scattered many neat cottages, surrounded with little gardens and crooked trees, which the CHINESE have naturally designed on some of their japanned and CHINA-ware. After travelling about a dozen of ENGLISH miles, we ascended the rocks by a winding path, formed by art; and, as soon as we reached the summit, we entered on the plain; for there is little or no descent into the desert from the opening between the rocks. I observed, that all the rivers which spring from the mountains on the north and west of CHINA, run towards the south and south-east; and those

those that rise westward of the desert, direct their courses, through SIBERIA, to the north and north-west; ^{1721.} which makes it evident, that the rocks and desert are higher than any places either in CHINA or SIBERIA. We now felt a very sensible change in the air. In the morning, we left a warm climate; but here, we found the desert all covered with snow. We travelled about five miles farther, and then pitched our tents on the banks of a small rivulet.

The ambassador, considering, that to travel along with the heavy baggage would render the journey, at this season, tedious and disagreeable, resolved to leave it under a proper guard, and proceed, by the shortest and speediest way, to SELINGINSKY. LOMY, our former conductor, being appointed in the same station, was consulted on this occasion; and agreed to make one of our company; while the CHINESE guard, commanded by another officer, took care of the baggage. Our party consisted of the ambassador, Mr. KRESTITZ, myself, and four servants. We packed up beds, and a few necessaries, and set out directly.

We rode very hard all the fourteenth; and, in the evening, took up our lodgings in a MONGALIAN tent, along with the family. The outside of the tent was

CHAP. XIII. hung round with several pieces of horse-flesh; on which
1721. our landlord and his wife supped, and invited us to
share their repast; but, as we had provisions of our own,
we desired to be excused. The disagreeable smell of
this supper made us resolve to sleep in the fields, for
the future, till we came to SELINGINSKY; for, although
the nights were somewhat cold and frosty, the weather
was dry and pleasant.

Next day, having got fresh horses, we proceeded on
our journey. Nothing of moment occurred till the
third of April, when we arrived, before noon, on the
banks of the river TOLA. It was now nineteen days
since we left our baggage, during which time we rode
very hard, changing horses generally three or four
times a day, and this was the first running water we
had seen. I cannot help taking notice of the pleasure
that appeared in every face at the sight of this stream;
and I need not mention how chearfully we regaled
ourselves on this occasion. For my own part, I thought
the most delicious wines of ISPAHAN and THIRAS, not
worthy to be compared to this simple element; so little
prized by those who enjoy it in plenty. Our bread
was all spent some days before; however, we had still
some mutton, with which we had been supplied, from
time

time to time, during our journey. All this time we observed no road; but kept mostly about one, or sometimes two days-journey to the northward of our former route. The greatest danger, attending this way of travelling, arose from the arrows which the MONGALLS had set in strong bent bows, covered with sand, for killing antelopes. One of our horses happened to tread on one of these bows; the arrow immediately flew out, and, most fortunately, hit the stirrup iron; otherwise the horse or rider would have been killed upon the spot. We had, indeed, guides to conduct us, from place to place, but they were unacquainted with any snares laid beyond their own bounds.

This day, about noon, some MONGALLS unluckily set fire to the long grass before us, which, by means of a strong wind, soon spread to a great distance. We immediately retired to the top of a neighbouring hill; (for now the grounds begin to rise, and the soil is much better near the river;) and, setting fire to the grass around us, travelled near a mile in a dismal cloud of smoke. Some of our people who were behind us, and unprovided with flints, were put to hard shifts, having their hair and cloaths all singed. We forded the TOLA in pretty deep water, and continued our journey

CHAP. XIII. through pleasant valleys, between gently rising hills,
1721. some of whose tops were adorned with woods, which
looked as if planted by art.

Nothing worth mentioning occurred, till the morning of the 6th of April, when we reached the river IRO; but found the ford so frozen that we could not ride it. As our provisions were now nearly all spent, and we were quite tired of lying in the open air, we wanted to pass the river at any rate. After long search for a ford, we, at last, found a place clear of ice; but excessively deep. We immediately stripped off our cloaths, mounted our horses, and swam a-cross the river; which was at this place about forty yards broad. After getting all safe to the other side, we lighted a great fire of sticks to dry and warm ourselves; and then set forward to the rivulet SARATZYN, the boundary between the RUSSIAN and CHINESE territories, which we reached in the evening. From the TOLA to this place we had seen no inhabitants; but here we found a few MONGALLS, subjects of RUSSIA, who hospitably entertained us with such fare as the place afforded.

The 7th, we set out early, and, at noon, came to a zimovey, (a single house built for the accommodation of travellers,) inhabited by a RUSSIAN, who entertained

us with good bread, and other homely fare. After a short stay we mounted, and, at night, came to another of these houses, belonging to the commissary, Mr. STEP-
NIKOFF, of the caravan, where we were well provided with necessary accommodations.

CHAP. XIII.
1721.

Next day, we arrived in good health at the town of SELINGINSKY; and all of us had good reason to return our most grateful thanks to the almighty Disposer of all events, who conducted us safe through so many dangers, without the least accident befalling any of our company.

The 12th, the ambassador having made the conductor an handsome present, and thanked him for his trouble and obliging behaviour, that gentleman took leave, and returned to CHINA.

Next day, we set out, on horse-back, for IRKUTSKY. We lodged every night in villages till the 16th, when we arrived at the POSSOLSKY monastery, situated on the south shore of the BAYKAL sea, as formerly observed. The superior received and entertained us with great hospitality; and furnished us horses and sledges for passing the sea upon the ice, which we found perfectly firm, though the people on the south shore were ploughing and sowing their oats.

April

CHAP. XIII.

1721.


April 7th, having taken leave of the monks, we placed ourselves in the sledges, and drove along a pathway upon the ice. We found several large gaps in the ice, which run for many miles across the sea, and are generally from two to five, or six feet, wide. These we passed on long boards, which we were obliged to carry along with us, for that purpose. They are made, I conjecture, by the air; which, being pent up under the ice, bursts out through these apertures. I observed also a number of small round holes, which are made by the seals, who come thither for breath and to bask themselves in the sun. These circumstances render travelling on the ice extremely dangerous, except in day light, and clear weather. Towards evening the ambassador and myself, being provided with light sledges, put on at a great rate, in order to get in with the shore before night. This we happily accomplished, and arrived at a fisherman's house, near the mouth of the ANGARA; where we found a warm room, and a boar's head, hot from the oven, for supper. But, a little before sun-set, a thick fog arose to the westward, accompanied with terrible thick drifts of snow, which soon covered the road upon the ice, and filled every gap and hole. Our poor people, who had not yet reached
the

the land, were caught in the storm, forced to stop short, CHAP. XIII. and ly on the ice all night, with their horses and car- 1721. riages. We had, indeed, dispatched the fishermen to conduct them to the shore; but the snow continuing to fall very thick, they returned without being able to find them. This disappointment created in us some uneasiness; but there was no remedy. We were obliged to wait patiently till the morning, when they arrived in a very distressed condition; half dead with cold and wet. However, by proper accommodation, and some warm liquor, they soon recovered.

Next day, we sent back the sledges to the monastery; and, after our people had refreshed themselves with a little sleep, about noon, we mounted, and proceeded about four miles, to the small chapel of ST. NICOLAS. We had now passed all the cataracts, and there was no ice to be seen in the river; we immediately, therefore, got boats and rowed down the stream. In the evening, we put ashore at a small village, where we lodged; and were plentifully provided with variety of excellent fresh fish for supper.

The 19th, in the morning, we went again on board; and, about two in the afternoon, landed at IRKUTSKY, and dined with our old friend, Mr. RAKITIN, the commandant

CHAP. XIII. mandant, who met us on the river, about two hours
1721. before we landed. Some days after our arrival, Mr.

ISMAILOFF was seized with a fever; which went off in a few days, without any bad consequences. We waited here for our baggage, which did not arrive till the second of July. During this time, little remarkable happened. We diverted ourselves with hunting and fishing; and, though we lived much at our ease, the time grew tedious, and we wanted much to be gone.

About the 10th of May, the ice began to break up, in the BAYKAL, and continued floating down the river, for some days, in great shoals. The weather was very hot, before the ice came down; but when this happened, an alteration was sensibly felt; for the air, about the sides of the river, became extremely chilly. A small part only of the ice, about the mouth of the ANGARA, floats down that river, the rest, being scattered along the shore by the winds, is melted down as the season advances. This is accounted the most unhealthy season of the year; as people, notwithstanding all possible precautions, are very apt to catch cold. I have already made some remarks on IRKUTSKY, and the country adjacent; I shall therefore only add, that in summer, which is very hot, the country is much pestered

ed with swarms of muskitoes and large gnats; which CHAP. XIII.
 are so troublesome, that those who have occasion to go ^{1721.}
 into the fields are obliged to wear nets of horse-hair, to
 defend their faces from the attacks of these insects.

July 2d, the barks arrived safe from SELINGINSKY, with our people and baggage. They told us many dismal stories of the hardships they had suffered in passing the desert; but, on comparing notes, the difference was not great between their misfortunes and our own.

After our people had rested a few days, and necessities were procured for the voyage, on the 5th, they shoved off, and rowed down the ANGARA. The ambassador, myself, and two servants, staid behind, in order to proceed in a small shallop, which had a little cabin in the stern, and was rowed with ten oars. The commandant caused it to be built for our use; and as it sailed quickly, and was rowed by our own men, we could pursue the voyage, at pleasure, without being confined to attend upon the heavy barks.

The 7th, we went on board, accompanied by the commandant and several other gentlemen, and fell down the river to a monastery in the neighbourhood, where we were invited to dine with the superior, who

CHAP. XIII. made us a grand entertainment of excellent fish; and
1721. furnished us, besides, with store of provisions for our
voyage. In the evening we took leave of the abbot, and the rest of our friends; and, being assisted by a rapid current, went down the river at a great rate. At night we put ashore, and took up our quarters in a village.

As little of importance occurred during the progress of our voyage, I need not be particular in describing it. The banks of the river, on both sides, are pleasant and fruitful, and beautifully diversified with tall woods, villages, and corn-fields; and we found every-where great abundance of fish. But what renders this fine country extremely disagreeable, is the swarms of muskitoes, with which every part of it is infested. The gnats, about ILIMSKY in particular, are of a much larger size, and are reckoned more venomous than any in SIBERIA; but have this good quality, that they never enter houses, as the muskitoes do. The TONGUESSES, when they are angry with any person, wish that an ILIMSKY gnat may sting him. This may appear but a slight punishment; but it marks the character of these simple people.

The 9th, we sailed the whole day, with a fair wind
and

and strong current; and, in the evening, overtook our CHAP. XIII. barques. Next day, we came to a great cataract, cal- ^{1721.} led PADUN from the steepness of the fall. This fall we passed safely, as there was water enough upon the rocks for our vessels. The next cataract we met with, which, from its great length, is called DOLGOY, was reckoned more dangerous; for, besides the length and deepness of the passage, it was extremely crooked, winding from one side to another by turns, among rocks and great stones. In passing these cataracts, the pilot sits upon the bow of the vessel, and makes signs, with his cap, to the people at the helm, which way to steer; for the waters, dashing against the rocks and great stones, make such an hideous noise, that not a single articulate sound can be heard. The oars, besides, must be plied very hard, in order to prevent the vessel from running to either side; for if once she touches the rocks, all the goods must infallibly be lost, and, perhaps, the mens lives; of which disasters there are many examples.

The 11th, we passed another cataract, called SHAMANSKY, which is reckoned the most dangerous of them all, the channel being very narrow and crooked. Some of our company chose to walk along the banks, rather than run the risque of passing by water; but

CHAP. XIII. they repented of their resolution; for they were obliged to scramble over rocks, and through thickets, where they saw many vipers, and other venomous creatures. We stopped, at the bottom of the fall, to take them on board, and refresh our rowers. As the ambaffador staid on board, I remained along with him.

Besides these three great cataracts, there are many lesser ones, called by the country-people SHIVERS; but, as the passing them is attended with little danger, I make no mention of them.

It is surprising that loaded vessels should pass these falls against the stream. They are commonly warped up by means of strong anchors and cables; and on the goodness of the tackle all depends; for should it chance to give way, all is lost. This is a laborious piece of work, though not very costly in these parts; and the navigation of this river is attended with no other inconvenience, except that of striking against stumps of trees hid under the water.

The 14th, we left the ANGARA, and entered the TONGUSKY, a mighty stream, formed by the ANGARA, and another small river called ELIM. The TONGUSKY points to the northward of the west, and is well stored with excellent fish.

We

We went ashore, this day, at a little village, called CHAP. XIII. SEEZA, situated on a high bank of the TONGUSKY. ^{1721.}
 Here we were met by our old acquaintance General KANIFER, who came from ELIMSKY to see Mr. IS-MAYLOFF. I took notice before of having seen this gentleman in our journey eastward. We dispatched our barques, and staid with him two days. After which we proceeded down the river; and he returned to E-LIMSKY by water, attended only by his own servants; for, though he was a prisoner, he had liberty to go where he pleased, as an escape was impracticable in such remote parts.

The 17th, we set sail with an easterly wind, and a strong current, which carried us along with great velocity. We passed many villages, and some TONGUSIAN huts, upon the banks, to which we made several visits. We found the men generally employed in fishing in their little canoes, and the women in looking after their children and rein-deer, which, at this season, lie near the huts, because the gnats will not suffer them to stay in the woods. In order to banish these troublesome vermin, they light fires all around the place of their abode; and the insects, unable to endure the smoke, immediately fly off. For the same reason, no person stirs
 abroad

CHAP. XIII. abroad without carrying, in his hand, a small earthen pot
17²¹. filled with smoking coals. The canoes skim upon the
water very swiftly, but the least touch of an unskilful
hand oversets them. The TONGUSE places himself on
his knees, in the middle of his boat, keeping it as even
balanced as possible; and, with a little paddle only, ven-
tures to cross the greatest rivers. I have seen them
haul to the side a sturgeon of great weight. When a
TONGUSE wants to go from one river to another, a-
cross a neck of land, he takes his boat upon his back,
and carries it whither he pleases.

The 19th, we were overtaken with such a heavy
shower of rain, in the middle of the river, that, before
we could reach the bank, our boat was half full, not-
withstanding all hands were employed in rowing, or
scooping out the water. However, after much labour
and difficulty, we at last got to land, wet to the skin;
and, what was much worse, all our bedding thoroughly
drenched in water. After we had hauled up our boat,
and fastened it to a tree, we went into a thick wood,
and kindled a great fire to warm and dry ourselves;
but, the rain being abated, a violent storm of wind a-
rose from north-west, so that we were forced to remain
all night in this dismal place, at a great distance from
any

any village. In this condition we lay, round a great fire, till next morning.

CHAP. XIII.
1721.


The 20th, early in the morning, we left the woods, went on board our boat, and proceeded down the river. About noon, we reached a village, on the right hand, where we halted some hours to refresh ourselves, and dry our cloaths. In the evening, we pushed off again, and came to another village, where we lodged. On this river are great numbers of water-fowl, of different kinds, which come hither to hatch their young in summer; and fly off, to the south, at the approach of winter. I observed, also, a large fowl, of a grayish colour, about the size of a kite; after it has hovered for sometime upon the wing, if it spies a fish in the water, it stoops suddenly, strikes it's prey, and even dives below water to catch it; after which it flies to the bank, and eats it.

There are also wild goats upon the rocks along the shore. They are very large animals, with long and thick horns. Their shaggy coat is brownish, having a black ridge down the back. They have long beards like common goats, but are twice as large. It is surprising to see them leap from one rock to another. They go in pairs about this season; but, towards win-

ter

CHAP. XIII. ter, retire, in herds, to the south. On the hills, and
 1721. in the woods, are all sorts of game, and wild beasts, natural to the climate.

The 21st, we overtook our barques, and kept in company with them till night, when we arrived at a village, where we lodged. In this river are many islands, some of which are very large, and others surrounded with high rocky shores. Most of them are covered with tall birch and pine trees, fit for masts to the largest ships; and form a beautiful prospect. We had no need to go ashore in order to seek sport, as we found plenty of wild ducks, and other water-fowl, wherever we came. As to fresh fish, we had more of them, in every village, than we could consume.

The two following days we continued our voyage, without meeting with any thing worth mentioning; and, on the morning of the 24th, arrived at the conflux of the rivers YENISEY and TONGUSKY, where the latter loses it's name; and, both joined, retain the name of YENISEY. The YENISEY falls into the TONGUSKY from the south, and its course is then turned northward by the current of the other; which, in my opinion, is the larger of the two. It is observed, that the YENISEY does not afford such plenty of fish, nor so good
 of

of their kinds, as the other rivers of this country. CHAP. XIII.
 These two rivers, joined, form a mighty stream; among ^{1721.}
 the greatest in the world. I think it larger than the
 VOLGA at ASTRACHAN. It continues its course to the
 north-west, daily augmented by other considerable ri-
 vers, till it falls into the icy sea.

In the evening, we arrived at the town of YENISEY-
 SKY, where we were met by our friend Mr. BECKLIMI-
 SHOFF, the commandant, who conducted us first to our
 lodgings, and then to his own house to supper. Our
 barques also arriving in the evening, the whole com-
 pany met again at this place; not a little happy at
 having safely passed the water-falls, and escaped the
 dangers to which we had already been exposed; though
 we were still above a thousand leagues from the end
 of our journey.

As we had no time to lose, our baggage was land-
 ed next day, and the barques discharged. The pack-
 ing the baggage, for land-carriage, took up two days;
 after which it was transported to a place called MA-
 KOF SKY, on the river KEAT, where it was again put on
 board other barques, which lay ready for that purpose.
 The road lies to the westward, mostly through thick
 and dark woods; in dry weather, it is tolerably good;

CHAP. XIII. but in heavy autumnal rains scarce passable. We staid
 1721. at YENISEYSKY, through the persuation of our hospitable landlord, the commandant, till we heard all was ready at MAKOFSKY.

Having formerly mentioned the pleasant situation of YENISEYSKY, and the fertility of the soil about it; I shall only add, that the harvest, at this place, was already far advanced; the barley being all reaped, and the people at work in cutting their oats. This seems very early, in a climate so far to the north, and must proceed from the heat of the summer, and the soil being fertilized by the nitrous particles of the snow, which lies so long upon the ground.

August 2d, we left YENISEYSKY on horse-back, accompanied by the commandant, who staid with us all night, at a village about ten miles from town. Next morning, we took leave of our friend, and proceeded to MAKOFSKY; where we arrived in the evening, and found the barques ready waiting for us.

The 4th, early in the morning, we went on board, and, pushing off from the shore, rowed down the river KEAT. The water being shallow, we made but little way the first day; but, as we advanced, it increased daily, by rivers and brooks from both sides. Before

fore we left MAKOFSKY, we laid in provisions for three weeks, in which time we computed we would enter the OBY; for, during this long navigation, there is not a single house, nor village, to be seen, except one religious house, possessed by three or four monks, resembling more an hermitage than a monastery. CHAP. XIII.
1721.

The KEAT is really a most dismal river. It is not above the flight of an arrow broad, and so overshadowed with tall trees, that you can scarce see the sun. The banks are a perfect wilderness, and so intangled with bushes, that no creature can pass along them but wild beasts; with which these woods greatly abound. Near the edge of the river, we found great quantities of black currants upon the bushes, the largest and best I ever saw. I was told the bears feed much on this fruit.

The river KEAT takes its rise from a lake at a small distance from the YENISEY; and were a canal cut between them, which might easily be done, there would be a passage, by water, from VERCHATURIA to the borders of CHINA. But his Czarish Majesty was, at this time, employed in works of the same nature, of much greater importance to his country.

The KEAT runs in a crooked channel, pointing, in

CHAP. XIII. general, to the west. The bottom is ouzy, and sometimes sandy. The barques, at first, run often a-ground on the sand banks, and the people were obliged to get into the water, and heave them off, by main force, with levers and setting poles; besides these little inconveniencies, we were molested with gnats and muskitoes, in this confined place, more than we had formerly been in any part of our journey. They were not, indeed, so numerous as they had been in the heat of summer; for the nights began to be cold, and the wind northerly. However, no wind could reach us in this close place; and I even wished myself in the desert again, where I might breath the fresh air. In short, the appearance of this place put me in mind of the descriptions, given by the poets, of the river STYX.

During our tedious voyage down the dark KEAT, our only diversion and exercise was shooting wild-ducks. One day Mr. ISMAYLOFF and myself went down the river in a small canoe, rowed by two soldiers, at some distance before the barques. We met with a large flock of ducks, which swam up a narrow creek in order to avoid us. We failed a little way after them; and, in the mean time, our barques passed us, and continued before us till night, still imagining they had

not overtaken us. This day's sport cost us dear; for, CHAP. XIII.
 our rowers being quite fatigued, we were obliged to 1721.
 relieve them, and row in our turns, till at last we came
 up with the barques, both hungry and tired. To make
 some amends, we had a good dish of wild-ducks for
 supper.

The 20th, we met with two OSTEAKS in their canoes, who had come from the river OBY, to catch fish and kill ducks; and had their fishing-tackle, and bows and arrows along with them. We were glad to see any human creature. We called them on board, and they willingly staid with us till we entered the OBY, and supplied us with plenty of fish and wild fowl. These were the first of the tribe of the OSTEAKS I had seen. I shall give some account of them, when I describe our voyage down that river, on the banks of which they have their habitations.

I formerly mentioned the great abundance of black currants growing on the banks of the KEAT. We found them an excellent and wholesome fruit; many of our people eat great quantities of them without the least bad effect.

After a tedious voyage, with little variety, we arrived, on the 28th, at a village called KETSKOY, a few miles

CHAP. XIII. miles distant from the OBY. After procuring, at this

^{1721.} place, what necessaries we wanted, and refreshing ourselves a few hours, we continued our voyage, making what way we possibly could; for fear of being frozen up, near some desert place on the OBY, before we came to TOBOLSKY, where we intended to land. We had no rain all the time we were upon the KEAT; which was a lucky circumstance, as our oars were upon deck. Had our barques drawn only about eighteen inches water, as was intended, we should not have been above fourteen days on this river, and thereby saved much time and labour; but, coming from CHINA, every person in the retinue had a little, which overloaded the vessels, and retarded their progress. The next day, we entered the famous river OBY, which, from its breadth and depth of water, appears, at least, equal to the VOLGA or YENISEY, and could carry ships of considerable burden.

The 30th, we reached the first town upon the OBY, called NARIM, situated on the north bank, about a gunshot from the river, and a few miles from the mouth of the KEAT. It commands a fine prospect, up and down the river, and of the woods to the south. Near the town, are a few corn-fields, and garden grounds, abundant.

abounding with greens and roots. This place has a small fortress governed by a commandant. The inhabitants are generally dealers in furs, which they buy from the OSTIAKS; and either carry them themselves to the borders of CHINA, where they are exchanged for the commodities of that nation, or dispose of them to merchants going thither.

The 31st, we dined with the commandant, and spent the rest of the day in laying in a stock of provisions. We found, at this place, plenty of fine fish; particularly sterlet, sturgeon, and mucksoon, and many more too tedious to mention; the last is peculiar to the OBY and IRTISH.

Here I met with Mr. BORLUTT, a native of FLANDERS, who had been a major in the SWEDISH service, and sent to this place a prisoner of war. He was a very ingenious gentleman, and had a particular turn for mechanicks. The commandant treated him more like a friend than a prisoner; which, indeed, was the case of most of those unfortunate gentlemen, whom the fate of war had sent to this country. His Czarish Majesty, well considering their circumstances, sent them to a plentiful country, where they could live at their ease till peace was restored.

September

CHAP. XIII. September 1st, having provided ourselves with necessaries, and got new rowers, our former ones returning to YENISEYSKY, from whence they came, in the evening we went again on board; and, putting off in fine calm weather, rowed down the OBY at a great rate; our course being much favoured by the rapidity of the current. We passed several villages, and a little monastery called TROYTZA. The banks to the north are pretty high, but to the south flat; by which means, on the melting of the snow in the spring, they are overflowed to a great extent. The river runs towards the north-west, with little variation. We continued our voyage night and day, except in great darkness, or a gale of contrary wind, when we were obliged to ly by in some creek.

The OSTYAKS, I mentioned above, differ from all the other tribes of natives in SIBERIA, both in complexion and language. Many of them are fair, resembling the people of FINLAND, and they have many FINNISH words in their language. Their manner of life is nearly the same with that of the TONGUSE, who border with them to the eastward. In summer, they live in the woods, in huts covered with birchen bark. In winter, they dig pits, across which they lay stakes,
above

above them spread earth, to keep them warm. They^{CHAP. XIII.} have a fire in the middle, and a hole in the roof to let^{1721.} out the smoke. During this season they live chiefly on fish, dried and smoked, wild fowl, or what else they catch in hunting. Many of them are stout fellows, fit for any service. Two of them, with their bows and arrows, a short spear, and a little dog, will attack the greatest bear. They are dexterous archers and fishermen. We had always a number of them, in canoes, round our barques, who supplied us with plenty of fish and wild fowl, of various sorts, at an easy rate. Give them only a little tobacco, and a dram of brandy, and they ask no more, not knowing the use of money.

The **OSTEAKS**, though a savage people in their manner of life, are far from being barbarous; for a single **RUSSIAN** will travel about all their abodes, in order to purchase furs, without fear of any violence. They are also remarkable for their honesty; and the small tribute of furs, which they pay annually to his Czarish Majesty, they bring punctually to the place appointed.

In summer, they wear nothing but coats and short drawers, made of fish-skins, dressed after their fashion; but, in winter, are clothed with skins of deer and other wild beasts.

CHAP. XIII.

172 I. They have no cattle except rain-deer, which supply their children with milk; and are, besides, of great service to them on many accounts.

As to their religion, they are ignorant heathens, like the rest of the natives of SIBERIA. They have many both male and female shamans, who are in great esteem among them. These shamans have many small images, or rather blocks of wood, rudely cut with a knife or hatchet, representing a human figure, dressed up in rags of various colours, by which they pretend to foretel future events, such as the good or bad luck of those that go a-hunting. But these are no better than others of the same species, already mentioned, who impose on the ignorance or credulity of their neighbours.

From what I have now and formerly said concerning these poor savage tribes, it will appear that they are involved in the most profound ignorance. Their manners are so rude, and minds uncultivated, that many of them seem stupid, and altogether unmindful of any thing beyond their present employment. I have, however, met with men of reflection among them, who agreed with the rest of mankind, in acknowledging one great

great almighty Creator of this world, and of every thing
 else. CHAP. XIII.
1721.

The archbishop of TOBOLSKY has, of late, baptised many of the OSTEAKS, and other natives, in a tour he made through SIBERIA with that view; and it is to be hoped his successors will follow his laudable example.

C H A P T E R X I V .

Our arrival at the town of SURGUTE, our journey thence to MOSCO, some account of the creature called mammon, &c.

AFTER a voyage of ten days from the town of NARIM, during which little remarkable happened, we arrived, on the 11th of September, at another town, called SURGUTE, situated on the north bank of the OBY, and defended by a small fort. The inhabitants, like the people of NARIM, are mostly traders in furs. The adjacent country, on both sides of the river, is overgrown with dark and tall woods, where there is no cultivated ground, except a few gardens. Bread is got, at a small charge, by water-carriage, from TOBOLSKY, and other places on the river IRTISH.

In the banks of the OBY, about this place, are found great quantities of that kind of ivory called, in this

CHAP. XIV. country, mammon's horn. Some of it, also, is found

^{1721.} on the banks of the VOLGA. Mammon's horn resembles, in shape and size, the teeth of a large elephant.

The vulgar really imagine mammon to be a creature living in marshes and under ground; and entertain many strange notions concerning it. The TARTARS tell many fables of its having been seen alive. But to me it appears that this horn is the tooth of a large elephant. When, indeed, or how, these teeth came so far to the northward, where no elephants can, at present, subsist during the winter-season, is what I am unable to determine. They are commonly found in the banks of rivers which have been washed by floods. The commandant of this place had his entry ornamented with several very large ones, and made me a present of one of them.

I have been told by TARTARS in the BARABA, that they have seen this creature, called mammon, at the dawn of day, near lakes and rivers; but, that on discovering them, the mammon immediately tumbles into the water, and never appears in the day-time; they say it is about the size of a large elephant, with a monstrous large head and horns, with which he makes his way in marshy places, and under ground, where he conceals him-

himself till night. I only mention these things as the CHAP. XIV. reports of a superstitious and ignorant people. 1721.

I have observed, in most of the towns, we passed, between TOBOLSKY and YENESIESKY, many of these mammons horns, so called by the natives; some of them very entire and fresh, like the best ivory, in every circumstance, excepting only the colour, which was of a yellowish hue; others of them mouldered away at the ends, and, when sawn asunder, prettily clouded. The people make snuff-boxes, combs, and diverse sorts of turnery ware, of them.

They are found in the banks of all the great rivers in SIBERIA, westward of IENCOUSKY, when the floods have washed down the banks, by the melting of the snow, in the spring. I have seen of them weighing above one hundred pounds ENGLISH. [I brought a large tooth, or mammon's horn, with me to ENGLAND, and presented it to my worthy friend Sir HANS SLOANE, who gave it a place in his celebrated Museum; and was of opinion, also, that it was the tooth of an elephant. This tooth was found in the river OBY, at a place called SURGUTE.]

The 12th, after we had been supplied with a fresh stock of provisions, and fresh rowers, we proceeded towards

CHAP. XIV. wards the next stage, called SAMAROFKY-YAMM, near
1721. the conflux of the OBY and IRTISH. The wind being
contrary, we made but slow progress. The near approach of winter, which usually begins about the first of October, made us hasten forward as fast as possible.

Next day, the wind being easterly, we hoisted our sails, and run along at a great rate; and, the 14th, arrived at a small village on the north shore. The south bank still continued low and flat. At this village we saw great quantities of wild geese, picked, and smoked, and hung in shades, for winter-provisions. We had some of them dressed; but I cannot much praise them for agreeable food. The people of this place catch vast numbers of them in day-nets, more on account of the down and feathers, than of their flesh, which is but of small value. We let our barques proceed; and detained a boat to follow them, as soon as we had seen the method of catching the wild geese. The sportsman conducted us into a spacious open plain, encompassed with woods and water. Here he had his large nets, with wide meshes, spread; and a small hut, made of green branches, to conceal himself. Upon the grass were scattered about a score of geese-skins stuffed, some of them standing, others sitting, in natural postures.

stures. As soon as he sees a flock flying over his head, he calls, with a bit of birchen bark in his mouth, exactly like the wild geese. On hearing the call, they take a turn round, and then alight among the stuffed skins; which being perceived by the sportsman, he immediately draws a string, and claps the nets over the whole flock, or as many of them as are within their reach. The geese always alight and rise with their heads to windward; to prevent, therefore, such as escape the day-net from flying off, he has a deep long net placed, on tall slender poles, to windward, which intangles great numbers in their rising. I am persuaded this method might easily be practised, in other parts of the world, to greater advantage; though, I believe, there are no where such quantities of waterfowl, especially geese of different kinds, as in these northern climates; where, free from annoyance, they bring forth their young among woods and lakes, and, at the approach of winter, fly off to the CASPIAN sea, and other southern regions.

There is here one species of geese, called kazarky, of a size less than the common wild goose, having beautiful scarlet spots about the head, and some feathers of the same colour in its wings. Of this sort I saw great
flocks

CHAP. XIV. flocks about the CASPIAN sea in winter. Besides these,
 1721. there are numbers of swans, and all sorts of water-
 fowl natural to the climate.

The woods are stored with game, and various sorts of wild fowl; particularly, the coc-limoge, the heath-cock, and several others too tedious to mention. The manner in which the coc-limoge is caught, by the OSTEAHS, is somewhat curious.

They make a paling, about four or five feet high, running from any wood, along a sandy bank, to the edge of the river, having the stakes set so close that the fowls cannot pass between them. In this paling they leave openings, at certain distances, large enough to afford a passage for these birds; and, rather than take the wing, the cock will seek a passage from one end of the hedge to the other. In these openings are set springs, on bent branches, which, as soon as touched, fly up, and catch the fowl, either by the neck, or feet. The OSTEAHS brought us these, and other wild fowl, in great plenty.

The 15th, in fine weather, we continued our voyage; using our sails or oars, by turns, as circumstances obliged us. Little material happened till the 19th in the evening, when we left the OBY, and entered the river

IRTISH; and, night coming on, we put ashore, where we staid till next morning. On entering the IRTISH, we had a strong current against our course, which had been down the stream, in all the different rivers, from SELINGINSKY to this place.

Before I proceed farther, I shall take a view of the famous OBY. It is one of the largest rivers in the world; and runs as long a course as any in SIBERIA, or perhaps in any other quarter of the globe. It rises in the desert, several hundred miles southward of the BARABA; and is daily augmented, by many streams of different names, till it reaches a place called BELOGARSKY, where it takes the name of OBY, at the conflux of two large rivers, the ALLEY and the TZARITT. These rivers joined form the OBY. The OBY signifies *both* in the RUSSIAN language. But I am of opinion, this river had that name long before SIBERIA was known to the RUSSIANS; as the natives still give it that name.

In going eastward, we passed the OBY upon the ice, at a place called TZAUSKY OSTROGUE; where it made no great appearance, in comparison of what it does after receiving the rivers TOM, TZULIM, KEAT, IRTISH, and many others; when, indeed, it may be reckoned in the number of the largest rivers in the world. It

CHAP. XIV. points generally to the north, with various windings,
 1721. till it meets the KEAT, when it turns to the north-west;
 and runs in that direction many miles, till, meeting
 with the IRTISH, it turns short, in a rapid current, to-
 wards the pole, swallowing up many rivers and brooks
 in its course; and, at last, it discharges itself into the
 NORTHERN ocean, at a great bay called OBSKAYA-GUBA,
 or the LIPS of the OBY.

Few rivers in the world contain greater plenty and
 variety of fish than the OBY. The banks to the south
 produce woods in abundance, interspersed with corn-
 fields, and good pasturage. I have been informed, that
 in these parts are rich mines of copper and iron, and
 even silver.

At the conflux of the OBY and IRTISH are several
 large islands; and farther north, several villages; but
 only one town of any note, called BERCOBA, situated
 on the left hand.

I may here observe, that geographers generally a-
 gree, that a line drawn from the place where the river
 TANAI, now called DON, discharges itself into the sea
 of AZOF, or the BLACK sea, to the mouth of the OBY,
 is the proper boundary betwixt EUROPE and ASIA.

The 20th, early in the morning, we shoved off from
 the

the shore, and made the best of our way up the IRTISH. CHAP. XIV.
In the evening, we reached SAMARIOFSKY-YAMM, where ^{1721.}
we lodged this night.

Next day, having taken on board fresh labourers, and the wind being northerly, and very cold, we put off in haste, hoisted sail, and went along at a great rate. The wind continuing from this point, was a certain sign that winter was at no great distance; and, that we might soon expect to be met by shoals of floating ice.

The 22d, the north wind still continued very strong, to our great joy. For, although there are many villages on the IRTISH, we dreaded the being frozen up near some desert place.

Next day, there fell a little snow, which softened the coldness of the air; but, at the same time, the wind unfortunately chopped about to the westward, and retarded our progress.

The 24th, we continued our voyage; and, next day, the wind again becoming northerly, we used our sails all that day and night. We proceeded, without any thing material happening, till the 29th, when we reached DEMIANSKY, a town standing on the eastern bank.

Next day, we set out immediately, after taking in

CHAP. XIV. fresh rowers. The fields were now covered with snow,
 1721. and the frost so strong, that the ice began to float in
 the river; and we expected every day to be frozen up.

These signs, of approaching winter, influenced Mr. ISMAYLOF to leave the barques, to follow as should be possible for them, while himself made the best of his way to TOBOLSKY, in a small boat. Accordingly, carrying me along with him, we immediately set out towards that place.

October the first, we continued rowing along, near the banks, and took in fresh rowers as occasion offered. The river was full of great shoals of ice, the frost strong, and much snow. In the evening, we arrived, cold and wet, at a small village, where we lodged in a warm room, about fifty verst from TOBOLSKY.

Next day, the river was so covered with ice that we could proceed no farther in our boats; but luckily, in the night, there fell snow enough for sledges. We soon got horses, and such open sledges as the place afforded, and, in the evening, arrived safe at the city of TOBOLSKY. We went immediately to the palace of Prince ALEXIE MICHAYLOVITZ CHERKASKY, the governor, who was an intimate friend of the ambassador. This Prince was much esteemed for his capacity, as well

well as his great probity and honour. We supped with CHAP. XIV. him, and then retired to our lodgings; but could not 1721. avoid commiserating the fate of our fellow travellers, labouring with the ice, and afraid of being frozen up every minute.

The 3d, we sent some soldiers to meet the barques, and assist them in coming up the river. And on the 5th, they arrived safe at TOBOLSKY; where they were, next day, discharged.

We were obliged to stay here for the falling of the snow, in order to proceed on sledges, the common method of travelling in winter. At this place, we thought ourselves at home, having good lodgings, good company, and plenty of provisions; so that we waited patiently for the setting in of winter; besides, we had now a frequented road, lying through a well inhabited country, all the way to MOSCO.

During our stay at TOBOLSKY, I was informed, that a large troop of gipsies had been lately at that place, to the number of sixty and upwards, consisting of men, women, and children. The RUSSIANS call these vagabonds tzigany. Their sorry baggage was carried on horses and asses. The arrival of so many strangers being reported to Mr. PETROFF SOLOVOY, the vice governor;

CHAP. XIV. vernor; he sent for some of the chief of the gang, and ^{1721.} demanded whither they were going? they answered him, to CHINA; upon which he told them, he could not permit them to proceed any farther eastward, as they had no passport; and ordered them to return to the place whence they came. It seems these people had roamed, in small parties, during the summer season, cross the vast countries between POLAND and this place; subsisting themselves on what they could find, and on selling trinkets, and telling fortunes to the country people. But TOBOLSKY, being the place of rendezvous, was the end of their long journey eastwards; and they, with no small regret, were obliged to turn their faces to the west again.

Before I leave this new world, as it may be called, of SIBERIA, I think it well deserves a few general remarks; besides the particulars mentioned in my journal.

This vast extent of eastern continent is bounded by RUSSIA to the west; by GREAT TARTARY to the south; on the east and north by the respective oceans; its circumference is not easy to ascertain. Foreigners commonly are terrified at the very name of SIBERIA, or SIBIR as it is sometimes called; but, from what I have
said

saïd concerning it, I presume it will be granted, that CHAP. XIV. it is by no means so bad as is generally imagined. On 1721. the contrary, the country is really excellent, and abounds with all things necessary for the use of man and beast. There is no want of any thing, but people to cultivate a fruitful soil, well watered by many of the noblest rivers in the world; and these stored with variety of such fine fish, as are seldom found in other countries. As to fine woods, furnished with all sorts of game and wild fowl, no country can exceed it.

SIBERIA is generally plain, sometimes varied with rising grounds; but contains no high mountains, and few hills, except towards the borders of CHINA, where you find many pleasant hills and fruitful valleys.

Considering the extent of this country, and the many advantages it possesses, I cannot help being of opinion, that it is sufficient to contain all the nations in EUROPE; where they might enjoy a more comfortable life than many of them do at present. For my part, I think, that, had a person his liberty and a few friends, there are few places where he could spend life more agreeably than in some parts of SIBERIA.

Towards the north, indeed, the winter is long, and extremely

CHAP. XIV. extremely cold. There are also many dreary wastes,
^{1721.} and deep woods, terminated only by great rivers, or
the ocean; but these I would leave to the present inhabitants, the honest OSTEAKS, and TONGUSES, and others like them; where, free from ambition and avarice, they spend their lives in peace and tranquillity. I am even persuaded, that these poor people would not change their situation, and manner of life, for the finest climate, and all the riches of the east; for I have often heard them say, that GOD, who had placed them in this country, knew what was best for them, and they were satisfied with their lot.

During our stay at TOBOLSKY, a messenger arrived from court, with the glad tidings of peace being concluded between his Czarish Majesty and the crown of SWEDEN, after a destructive war, which had raged above twenty years. This was very agreeable news to every body, particularly to the officers who had remained so long in captivity. The peace was proclaimed with firing of guns, and other rejoicings usual on such occasions.

November 18th, all the roads being now firm, and fit for sledges, we left TOBOLSKY in a strong frost. As we returned by the same road we went to the eastward,
which

which I have already described, I shall not repeat the particulars, but only name the towns through which we passed, viz. TUMEEN, EPANTSHIN, VERCHATURIA, and SOLIKAMSKY. The weather being excessively cold, we remained two days at this place. From thence we came to KAY-GOROD, then to KLINOFF; from which, instead of going towards CAZAN, we proceeded straight through the woods towards the town of NISHNA-NOVOGOROD, situated at the conflux of the VOLGA and OCKA. This road is nearest, but very rough and narrow in many places, the country being overgrown with large tall woods, of different kinds, according to the nature of the soil. The principal inhabitants are the TZEREMISH, who afford but indifferent accommodation for travellers; however, the people are very courteous and hospitable. Among them are scattered a few RUSS villages, and a very few RUSS towns of small note; for which reason, I shall only mention the names of such as lay in our road from KLINOFF to KUSMA-DAMIANSKO, (which last place is situated on the east bank of the river VOLGA) viz. BISTRITSKY, a large village; ORLOFF, a small town; YURIEFSKY, a village; KOTELNITZY, a small town; a village called TZORNO-RETZKY; a large village called VOSKRESENSKY; YARANSKY, a small town; TZA-

CHAP. XIV. REVO-SANCHURSKY, another small town; SHUMETREY, a

^{1721.} village. Besides these, and some others, we passed through many villages, inhabited by TZEREMISHIAN and TZOOWASHIAN TARTARS, to mention which would be too tedious. These people, having destroyed the woods about their villages, live much at their ease, have plenty of corn and cattle, and great numbers of bee-hives, whereby they furnish the markets with great quantities of honey and bees-wax. They also furnished us with changes of horses, whenever we had occasion for them; but their tackling of harness, &c. is so bad, that much time was lost in accommodating them to our heavy carriages; so that we thought ourselves happy when we met with RUSSIAN villages, which are far better provided in that respect, and more accustomed to travelling, than those poor people, who never go far from their own home.

After a tedious journey, we came out of the woods, to the VOLGA, and travelled along upon the ice; which, in some places, was not very firm. In the evening we reached NISHNA-NOVOGOROD; where we staid some days to refresh ourselves, and kept our CHRISTMAS with the commandant.

We proceeded again on the 28th, and, little mate-

rial happening, arrived safe at the capital city of MOS-CHAP.XIV.
co, on the 5th day of January, 1722; where we found ^{1722.}
his Czarish Majesty, and all the court, who had lately
arrived from ST. PETERSBURG; and preparations were
making for grand fire-works, triumphal arches, and
other marks of joy, on account of the peace. With
which I shall conclude my journal.

I THINK it will not be unacceptable to the reader,
if I subjoin a list of the places and distances between
ST. PETERSBURG and PEKIN. They are as follows.

It is to be noted, that the distances between ST. PE-
TERSBURG and TOBOLSKY in SIBERIA, are all measured
versts; each verst being 500 RUSS fathoms, each fa-
thom consisting of 7 feet ENGLISH measure; so that a
RUSSIAN verst measures exactly $1166\frac{2}{3}$ yards.

	Versts.		Versts.
From St. Petersburg		Brought up	141
to Yeshore	35	to Podberezwia	23
Tossinsky-Yam	23	Novogorod	22
Lubany	26	Bronitza	35
Chudova	32	Zaitsoff	30
Spaskoy Poliste	25	Kristitskom	31
To be carried up	141	To be carried over	282

	Versts.		Versts.
Brought over	282	Brought up	883
to Yazhetbeetfach	39	to Selo-Sudogda	34
Zemnigorskom	23	Moshkach	30
Edrovo	22	Selo-Dratshevo	26
Kotelofsky	35	Murom	30
Vishny-Volotshoke	36	Selo-Monachovo	25
Vidropusko	33	Selo-Pagofsty	29
Torshoke	36	Selo-Bogoroditzky	39
Medna	33	Nishna Novogorod	28
Tweer	28	Zyminka	25
Gorodna	31	Selo-Tatintza	31
Zavidova	27	Belozerika	35
Klinn	27	Fokina	29
Peshka	30	Selo-Sumkach	34
Tlhorny Graz	24	Kofma-Damiansko	20
City of Mosco	28	Bolshoy Rutky	10
Novo-Derevenoy	27	Kumea	50
Bunkovo	26	Shumetrey	30
Kyrzatsky	29	Zarevo-Santzursky	30
Lipnach	28	Potavinoy-Vrague	47
Undola	17	Yaranskey	29
Volodimer	22	Selo-Voskrefensky	34
To be carried up	883	To be carried over	1528

	Versts.		Versts.
Brought over	1528	Brought up	2065
to Tshorna-Retzka	47	to Zezefsky	15
Kotelnizy	46	Selo-Kossinsky	36
Yuriofsky	20	Logginoff	32
Orloff	26	Selo-Syrinsky	28
Selo-Bifritz	21	Nikonoff	25
Klinoff	30	Town of Sollikam-	
Slobodsky	28	sky	30
Selo-Prokofiefsky	30	Martinskoy	25
Selo-Solovetzkoy	33	Yanvey	35
Troitska-monašte-		Moltzanoff	35
ry.	22	From Moltzanoff to	
Kruto-Gorsky	25	Verkaturia are five	
Katharinsky-mona-		stages, making	181
stery	25	thence to Saldin-	
Tikofsky	35	skaya Pogostia	27
Leonsky	25	Maggnevoy	46
Kay-Gorod	35	Fominoy	28
Reka Volva	34	Babichinoy	53
Korish Retska Be-		Turinsky	53
refofsky	25	Slattkoy	50
Selo-Yfinofsky	30	Selo-Roshdefvinsky	50
To be carried up	2065	To be carried over	2815

	Versts.		Versts.
Brought over	2815	Brought up	2978
Tumeen	51	Backfarino	34
Soffnovoy	46	Sheftakovo	26
Pokrofska-Slaboda	31	Dechterevo	39
Iskinskoy	35	City of Tobolsky	43
To be carried up	2978		3120
From St. Petersburg	to Mosco		734
From Mosco	to Kufma-Damiansko		564
From Kufma-Damiansko	to Zarevo-Santzursky		120
From Zarevo-Santzursky	to Sollikamsky		813
From Sollikamsky	to Tobolsky		888
			3119

It will be observed, that, in our journey outwards to CHINA, we went by CAZAN; which must make the distance, we travelled, between ST. PETERSBURG and TOBOLSKY, more than the above, (which is the shortest road,) by, at least, 200 versts.

The

The route continued from TOBOLSKY, eastward, down the river IRTISH, and up the rivers OBY and KEAT, by water.

From Tobolsky Versts.

to Samariofsky-Yamm 570

the town of Surgute 262

the town of Narim 590

the town of Makofsky, up the ri-

ver Keat 1480

by land, to Yeniseysky 92

to Elimsky, along the river Ton-

gusky 627

to Irkutsky 450

cross the Baykall lake, to Selin-

ginsky 394

to Saratzine, the boundary be-

tween Russia and China, 104

to the river Tola 467

to the wall of China, cross the

Hungry Stepp, or Desert, 1212

to the city of Peking 200

From Tobolsky to Peking 6448

From St. Petersburg to Tobolsky 3119

9567

N.B. The

N. B. The versts between TOBOLSKY and PEKIN are computed, which generally exceed the measured verst.

It will be noted, that the route above-recited is that by which we returned from CHINA.

JOUR-

6448

3110

9557

N.B. The

to the city of Pekin
From Tobolsky to Pekin

From St. Petersburg to Tobolsky

Vol. II

JOURNAL
OF THE
RESIDENCE
OF
M^R. DE LANGE,
AGENT OF HIS IMPERIAL MAJESTY
OF ALL THE RUSSIAS,
PETER THE FIRST,
AT THE
COURT OF PEKIN,
DURING THE YEARS 1721, & 1722.

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH,
PRINTED AT LEYDEN BY
ABRAHAM KALLEWIER,
IN MDCCXXVI.

THE RUSSIAN

OF THE

EMPEROR

OF

MEDAL

AGENT OF HIS IMPERIAL MAJESTY
OF ALL THE RUSSIAN

AFTER THE FIRST
AT THE

COURT OF PEKIN

DURING THE YEARS

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH

PRINTED AT LEYDEN BY

ABRAHAM KALLERWIER

IN MDCCXCVI

Y

Vol. II

TRANSLATION OF THE EDITOR'S PREFACE TO THE READER.

THIS Journal is a very curious and an authentick piece, and certainly merits the attention of the publick, as well for its use as the novelty of the subject it treats of.

As the world is not so sufficiently informed of what passes in those distant countries, as to form a tolerable judgment of what the court of RUSSIA may have to do with that of CHINA, I am now about to give a succinct relation thereof to the reader, that it may serve him as an introduction to the work.

It is now well known, that the frontiers of SIBERIA are contiguous to those of CHINA; for this reason, it is natural to think, that the court of RUSSIA should have more frequent correspondence with that of CHINA, than any other court of EUROPE. Nevertheless, this correspondence, between the two courts, is of no ancient date; as it did not commence but since the

MONGALL TARTARS made themselves masters of CHINA, about the year 1640; for it was about that time that the RUSSIANS, after being possessed of SIBERIA from the latter end of the sixteenth century, began to spread themselves over that vast country; not having met with the least resistance from the ancient inhabitants of those parts; till, at last, they came to establish themselves about the lake BAYKALL, and the river AMOOR, thereby becoming near neighbours to the MONGALL TARTARS; by intercourse with them the RUSSIANS soon came to understand, that their nation had possessed themselves of CHINA; and that it was the Prince who was actually their Chan, who filled, at that time, the throne of CHINA.

The court of RUSSIA was not ignorant of the extreme opulence of the empire of CHINA; and, apprized that the distance from SIBERIA could not be great, resolved to try if they could not draw some advantages from that discovery, by establishing a regular commerce between SIBERIA and CHINA; promising themselves no less, than to draw into RUSSIA, from that empire, a great part of its riches. For this purpose, the court of RUSSIA sent, successively, several ambassadors, or envoys, to CHINA; who succeeded so well, that the

CHINESE, at length, consented to the entry of the caravans into their dominions, from SIBERIA, on conditions very advantageous to RUSSIA.

During these transactions, the RUSSIANS daily gained ground, on the frontiers of the MONGALL TARTARS; and even made no scruple, when they thought fit, of establishing themselves on their territories, with a design to approach on one side, along the river AMOOR, towards the ORIENTAL sea; and on the other side, along the river SELINGA, towards the frontiers of CHINA.

In the mean time, the new government of CHINA was not long of comprehending, that all these new settlements, which the RUSSIANS made upon the frontiers of the MONGALLS, would, in time, render their power too formidable to the subjects of CHINA; and might come at last to be very dangerous to the repose of CHINA itself, in case any misunderstandings between the two nations should arise. On these considerations, they resolved to oppose settlement to settlement; and to build some towns, and villages on the frontiers of the MONGALL TARTARS, at some distance from the last settlements of the RUSSIANS; in order thereby to prevent their penetrating further into the country,

country, to the prejudice of the TARTAR subjects of CHINA.

In consequence of this resolution, the CHINESE built, about the year 1670, the towns of MERGEEN and NAUN, and the borough of XIXIGAN, with several other boroughs, and villages thereabouts; which they peopled with colonies of MONGALLS, subjects of CHINA.

Thence arose disputes between the two empires, on the subject of their frontiers. And in place of the negotiations being confined to affairs of commerce, and mutual protestations of amity and friendship, on one side and the other; the grand object of all their aims, came now to be the accommodation of the affair of the frontiers, and the regulation of limits between the two empires. But in as much as one would preserve to themselves the right of doing as they thought fit; and the other would, at all hazards, keep them from doing what they thought dangerous; there arose a great coolness between them; which came to blows in the years 1684 and 1685. It is true that they laboured incessantly, both on the one side and on the other, for a re-establishment of good harmony between the two nations; to this end there were held two different congresses, at the town of NERCHINSKY, between
the

the plenipotentiaries of RUSSIA, and those of CHINA. But those gentlemen met with so many difficulties, in reconciling their different sentiments and interests, that they were obliged to separate without success. At last, F. GERBILLON, a Jesuit, returned again to the town of NERCHINSKY, in quality of plenipotentiary of the court of CHINA; and there, in 1689, signed a treaty of peace, and perpetual alliance, between the two empires; which was afterwards ratified, in the usual forms, by both the courts.

That treaty was not very advantageous to the RUSSIANS; because it set bounds to their establishments on these frontiers, which was a very disagreeable article. And as they believed the CHINESE would not regard it very strictly, provided they did not advance further on the side of the SELINGA, and the towns they had lately built to the southward of the frontiers; the RUSSIANS again began to make new settlements along the river AMOOR; and, at last, to build along the south bank of that river, thirty leagues beyond their limits, a town they called ALBAZIN; in hopes that the CHINESE could not be without SIBERIAN furs, and would rather chuse to wink at these enterprises, than enter into a new war. But they were quite mistaken in their
calcula-

calculation; for the MONGALLS furnished such quantities of furs to CHINA, from the time they had orders from the Chan to spread themselves along the banks of the AMOOR, that the CHINESE began to perceive that they could be sufficiently supplied with furs, without those from SIBERIA. And in these sentiments they spoke freely their thoughts of these new enterprises of the RUSSIANS.

In the mean time, the RUSSIANS gave them good words, and fair promises; but continued to carry on their point, flattering themselves, that they might find some favourable opportunity of pacifying them. Nevertheless, the CHINESE growing doubtful of the RUSSIANS complying with their demands, which they thought well founded, at length, had recourse to force; and, in the year 1715, made the MONGALLS, subjects to CHINA, take arms, and laid siege to the town of ALBAZIN, the place which was the principal ground of their complaints. This siege continued three years; and as the late PETER the great was occupied in his grand designs to the westward, he would not continue the quarrel with CHINA. Thus they let the town fall into the hands of the MONGALLS; and agreed to a new provisional treaty with the court of PEKIN. But as other differences

ferences, on the frontiers, still subsisted, the court of RUSSIA sent again, in 1719, an envoy extraordinary to PEKIN, to regulate entirely what remained to be adjusted between the two empires; and seeing, that by means of these differences, the commerce of the caravans was much lessened, the true object of his negotiation was to re-establish that commerce; and, to that end, to try to induce the court of CHINA to consent to the residence of an agent, from RUSSIA, at the court of PEKIN, who might take care to watch over the affairs of the caravan, and so preserve a good understanding between the two empires. The envoy of RUSSIA, having happily executed the last part of his commission, left, at his departure from PEKIN, Mr. de LANGE, as agent of RUSSIA at the court of PEKIN, who was the author of the following journal.

The publick is obliged for this tract to a foreign minister, who resided many years at the court of RUSSIA; and who permitted it to be communicated to the publick. But, to make the reading of it more agreeable, and more useful to the world, it was thought fit to add some little remarks in the places which required elucidation; that nothing might be wanting to the reader on so interesting a subject.

JOURNAL

O F

179

MARCH.

1721.

MR. DE LANGE, &c.

MR. DE ISMAYLOFF, ambaffador and envoy extraordinary of his Czarish Majesty, having fixed his departure from PEKIN to be on the 2d of March, after having finished his negotiations at the court of CHINA in the best manner he poffibly could *, I took the refolution of accompanying him to the wall of CHINA; but the gentlemen of the miniftry thought proper to refuse me a paffport; pretending, that, as I was ordered by his Czarish Majesty to refide at the court of the Chan †, it was neceffary that I fhould have permission of the Bogdoi-Chan himfelf; not only for going as far as the grand wall, but alfo, for every time that I would go to ftay a night without the walls of PEKIN; to the

* Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, a gentleman of great merit, and a captain in the regiment of the PREOBRASCHINSKY guards, was fent, in the year 1719, by the late Emperor PETER the Great, to CHINA, with the character of ambaffador and envoy extraordinary, to renew the treaties between RUSSIA and CHINA; and to endeavour to bring the court of PEKIN to agree to a regulated free commerce with RUSSIA.

† All the TARTARS give to their reigning princees the title of Chan; and, as the houfe, which at prefent fills the throne of CHINA, is come from that branch of Pagan TARTARS, known to us by the name of ORIENTAL MONGALLS, the Emperors of CHINA conform themfelves to the eftablifhed custom of their nation; preferving, to this time, the title of Chan. *Vide Hift. Genealog. des TARTARES.*

MARCH. intent, that the court might always be assured that no
1721. ill accident should happen to me, being a foreigner*.

And, as the Bogdoi-Chan had already quitted his residence of PEKIN, to take the diversion of hunting, it was not without a good deal of trouble that I obtained permission to accompany Mr. de ISMAYLOFF as far as CZAMPINSA, which is a town 60 ly † distant from PEKIN, from whence I returned, being escorted by a clerk of the council for the affairs of the MONGALLS, and some soldiers; and thus came back to PEKIN on the 6th.

The 7th, early in the morning, I saw enter the courtyard of my house a man who had the appearance of a poor beggar; he brought with him some poor starved fowls, and salted cabbage, together with some pots of tarassun, which is a fermented liquor, made of grain, and what the CHINESE drink instead of wine, making it warm before they drink it. This man, having set it

* Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, at his departure from PEKIN, left, by virtue of his instructions, Mr. de LANGE, in quality of agent of RUSSIA, to treat of, and bring to a conclusion, a regulation of commerce, and the establishment of an easy correspondence, between the two empires; and although the CHINESE ministry opposed, most strenuously, the residence of the said agent at

their court, on pretence that it was contrary to the fundamental constitutions of the empire; yet the said ambassador knew so well how to take his measures, that the Bogdoi-Chan gave his consent to it, notwithstanding all the intrigues of the ministry to the contrary.

† One ly of CHINA is exactly 360 geometrical paces.

all down in my court-yard, was returning; when I ordered him to be called back, to inform me of the meaning of his so doing. Upon which he told me, "That it was part of the provisions he had bought for me, by order of the college who have the charge of the Emperor's magazines of provisions; but, that not being able to bring all at once, he was going to fetch the rest." Whereupon, being informed by him what his occupation was, I understood, "That he had made a contract, with the said college, to furnish me, every nine days, with a certain quantity of provisions for my house." Upon which I ordered him to take every thing away that he said he had bought for me; and to bring no more to my house, till I should receive previous information, from the council for foreign affairs, how much I was daily to receive by order of the Bogdoi-Chan, and through whose hands I was to receive them.

Whereupon I sent to let the Mandarins (who were appointed to propose to the council what might regard me) know what had occurred with this man, who came, in the above-manner, to bring me provisions on the part of the Bogdoi-Chan; and, also, that I should always most respectfully receive whatever the Bogdoi-Chan,

MARCH. Chan, from his friendship for his Czarish Majesty,

1721. should order for my subsistence, in case it was sent me in
a proper manner; at the same time, desiring them to acquaint me with the particulars of what the court had ordered for my subsistence. Whereupon those gentlemen sent me the following answer, " That I should receive the same allowance which I had received before, " during the residence of the envoy extraordinary at " this court; and that they had already made an agreement to deliver my allowance regularly." I represented to them thereupon, " That I never had any separate allowance during the residence of his excellency the envoy at PEKIN, having had the honour of " eating always at the same table with him; that, for " this reason, I could now receive nothing, until I should " know precisely wherein it was to consist; and that, " after I should know what the allowance was to be, I " should desire them to pay me the amount of the " same in money, which they were to pay to the purveyor." These gentlemen were not wanting in letting me know, " That I ought not so nicely to examine " what the Bogdoi-Chan, without any obligation, had " ordered to be given me, out of his mere grace. But I assured them, in strong terms, in my turn, " That I " abso-

“ absolutely would receive nothing on these terms; for MARCH.
 “ I was very doubtful whether the Bogdoi-Chan was 1721.
 “ informed, that such a person was trusted with the dif-
 “ position of what allowance he was pleased to order
 “ for me.” This resolution much discomposed the
 gentlemen Mandarins, who had reckoned on supply-
 ing their own tables with my provisions; but, seeing
 how difficult it was to obtain their ends on this occa-
 sion, they at last delivered to me the following speci-
 fication, and said it was what the Bogdoi-Chan had or-
 dered for my allowance, viz. per day,

1 fish.	2 oz. of butter.
1 sheep.	2 oz. of lamp-oil.
1 pot of tarassun.	$\frac{1}{2}$ gin salted cabbage
1 fowl.	2 small measures of rice.
1 bowl of milk.	15 gin of wood.
2 oz. of tea.	

To my interpreter per day,

1 oz. of tea.	2 small measures of rice.
$\frac{1}{2}$ gin of flower.	8 gin of wood. and
2 oz. of butter.	Every 9 days a sheep.
2 oz. of lamp-oil.	

To every one of my domesticks per day,

1 $\frac{1}{2}$ gin of beef.	1 measure of rice.
1 oz. of salt.	5 gin of wood.

To

MARCH.

1721.



To a dragoon who was left behind, by the envoy, at PEKIN, upon account of some tapestries they were working for his Czarish Majesty,

1 measure of rice. 2 oz. of lamp-oil.

1 oz. of tea. 5 gin of wood. and

$\frac{1}{2}$ gin of flower. Every 9 days a sheep.

2 oz. of butter.

By *laen* you are to understand ounces; and by *gin*, pounds.

Upon delivering this specification, the Mandarins acquainted me, “ That, as they were obliged to buy “ the fish, the fowls, the sheep, and the milk, for my “ provisions, with ready money, I might receive the “ value of those things in money; but, in regard to the “ other articles, I must content myself to receive them, “ in kind, from the Chan’s magazines*.

Upon which I assured them, “ I should make no “ objection, provided they did it in a decent manner, “ and not by unknown people that marched off as soon

* The Emperor of CHINA receives the greatest part of the tribute of his subjects, in the country, in provisions and manufactures of the growth of the several provinces; which are afterwards distributed, in kind, to all persons in the service of this monarchy, and reckoned to them as part of

their salary; so that all the gold and silver, that comes into the treasury of the Chan, arises from the tribute of the cities, the duties inwards and outwards, the tolls of passengers, the mines of gold and silver, and fines or confiscations; all which together amount, every year, to immense sums.

“ as they had thrown it down in my court-yard, as MARCH.
 “ they had once done.” At the same time I demanded 1721.
 of them, “ Whether I could still have the Chan’s hor-
 “ fes, to make use of when I should have occasion, as I
 “ had during the residence of the envoy extraordinary.”
 They answered me thereupon, “ That I might certain-
 “ ly have the Chan’s horses always; but then, as the
 “ stables of the Chan were at a considerable distance,
 “ it was necessary for me always to acquaint them of
 “ my intentions, the day before I intended to ride out;
 “ upon such notice, they would take care that the hor-
 “ fes should always be ready at my quarters, very early
 “ in the morning*.” To avoid this inconvenience,
 and to avoid the being obliged to let them know every
 day where I would go, I took the resolution to buy six
 horses, and to keep them at my own expence, though
 forage was very dear at PEKIN. The guard that had
 been placed upon the envoy’s quarters, during the time
 of his stay at PEKIN, under the command of a briga-
 dier, remained still on the same footing after his de-
 parture, as did the two Mandarins of the 37th order†;

* At PEKIN they always make visits in town on horse-back. But the Princes of the blood, and the grand Mandarines, are generally carried in litters on these occasions, attended with a numerous train of domesticks.

† Every man appointed to any publick charge, or dignity, in CHINA, from the highest to the lowest, is called by the name of Mandarin; whence it comes that there are many orders, which are all distinguished,

MARCH. together with a clerk, to receive from me whatever I
 17²¹. should have to propose, whether by word of mouth, or
 by writing; and to make their report to the council of
 foreign affairs; and this appeared to me a very good
 omen.

The 9th, the brigadier of the guard of my quarters
 let me know, that the Bogdoi-Chan would return from
 hunting the next day; and that if I was desirous to go
 to meet him, he would give orders, that the Manda-
 rins should be ready to escort me, with a guard of
 horse, for the security of my person.

The 10th, I mounted on horse-back, very early, to
 go to meet the Chan. When his majesty saw me, he
 called me to him, and asked me "If I did not repine
 "to be alone in a foreign empire, so far from EUROPE?"
 he further asked, "If I was well? and if I was content-
 "ed?" Upon which, having with a profound reverence
 thanked his majesty for my gracious reception, I as-
 sured him, "That I found myself perfectly well; and I
 "could not but be well content with having the ho-
 "nour of residing at the court of so grand a monarch."

one from the other, by difference of habits,
 characters, and figures, which are embroi-
 dered or sewed on their habits; in so much,
 that, upon seeing a Mandarin, it may be im-

mediately known of what order he is; be-
 cause every Mandarin is forbid to appear in
 publick without the habit of his order, un-
 der pain of the most rigorous penalties.

After

After which his majesty, having dismissed me, was carried in his litter to PEKIN, followed by a very numerous court.* MARCH. 1721.

The 11th, 12th, and 13th, I notified to the Mandarins, solicitors in my affairs, "That, having several things to get made for the Emperor, my master, I should have great occasion for the money which divers merchants of PEKIN were owing to the commissary GUSAITNIKOFF, who had been lately at PEKIN with the caravan of SIBERIA†; and I craved their assistance to facilitate the recovery of those sums, seeing the debtors had engaged themselves, before the envoy extraordinary, to pay me the same immediately after his departure." The Mandarins explained themselves very favourably thereupon; but our debtors, having got notice of it, retired into the country; which

* The Emperor of CHINA might be then in his 69th lunar year; but he was still very well disposed in body and mind, and was looked upon as a monarch of superior penetration and genius. The fathers Jesuits, missionaries in CHINA, had great influence with him; and he usually consulted them on all affairs of importance. He mounted the throne anno 1662, aged eight years, and died in September 1722.

The Prince, his 3d son, who already commanded the armies of the empire, succeeded to the empire; for the deceased Em-

peror had confined his two eldest sons in a close prison, some years before his death, upon some alledged attempts to rebel, true or false, and declared them excluded from succeeding to the empire. Nevertheless their brother set them at liberty, immediately upon his accession to the empire, and heaped favours on them, to make them forget the loss of their right, which he possessed.

† They give the title of Commissary to those who have the direction of the caravans, which come from SIBERIA TO PEKIN to trade.

MARCH. obliged me to leave this affair to another opportunity.

17²¹.

The 15th, the Bogdoi-Chan went to CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE, which is a house of pleasure belonging to his majesty, 12 ly westward of PEKIN, where he frequently makes his residence. But having observed, in his passing, that the triumphal arches, and other like ornaments, which are raised on his birth-day, on both sides of the grand road, paved with square flat stones, that reaches from PEKIN to CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE, were not of the usual magnificence, all the ministry were disgraced for many weeks. Upon which the ministers, having instantly ordered the demolition of all that had been built, caused to be built up anew, from the palace of the Emperor at PEKIN quite to CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE, a great number of triumphal arches, and of most magnificent columns, of an exquisite taste, all embellished with gildings, and festoons of all sorts of rich silks of most lively figures and colours. At the same time, in several places, they erected theatres of great beauty; where the most able comedians exerted their talents, in representing the most difficult and curious parts of their professions; accompanied with the grandest concerts of musick, both vocal and instrumental, diversified with the amusements of dancing, and feats
of

of uncommon agility. All these entertainments being prepared, the ministers went in a body to the imperial palace, supplicated the monarch on their knees, with their faces prostrate to the ground, that he would be pleased to admit them to his good graces; and that he would be pleased to send some, in whom he could confide, to examine their new structures*. But the Bogdoi-Chan ordered them to be told, "That he would see nothing of what they had done, and that he would never celebrate his birth-day at PEKIN more; for that he was as much Emperor of CHINA at CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE, as he should be though sitting on the imperial throne at PEKIN†."

MARCH.

1721.

The 17th, I desired the Mandarins, solicitors for my affairs, to come to me upon business that regarded the council. Upon which they sent me word, that one of them being ill, the other dared not to meddle

* The honours which they pay to the Emperors of CHINA approach even to adoration; all those who have audience of him, being obliged to prostrate themselves three times before him, from which none are exempted, not even ambassadors, or other foreign ministers; Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, notwithstanding his quality, being obliged to go through that ceremony, as well as all others.

† The deceased Emperor of CHINA held the great lords of CHINA very cheap; for he

well knew, that, in their hearts, they bore the TARTAR yoke very impatiently. Nevertheless, since the severe executions he ordered in the beginning of his reign, he seldom punished with death the great CHINESE Mandarins, who fell into disgrace, contenting himself with condemning them to pay exorbitant pecuniary fines; which incapacitated them from doing any thing against his authority, whatever desire they might have so to do.

MARCH. in matters that regarded the council, without the participation of his comrade. This obliged me to wait the recovery of the sick Mandarin, and till I could see them both together.

The 18th, 19th, and 20th, I was willing to avail myself of the opportunity the sickness of one of my Mandarins gave me, to make some visits to merchants of my acquaintance, and to the Fathers Jesuits, hoping thereby to induce them to return my visits, and give me opportunity of knowing something of the commerce of this empire. But I found that they all received my visit with very forced civilities, and great reserve; particularly the merchants, who endeavoured to appear much occupied about other important affairs; so that seeing it very difficult to bring them into my views, in the present conjuncture, I thought it best to postpone these sorts of visits to a more proper time. But they, not doubting that such a reception would occasion my making many reflections, let me know, by a third hand, " That my visits should be always " most agreeable to them, and that they wished, with " all their hearts, to divert me every day better than " the custom of their country permitted them; and " likewise, on occasion, to come and see me, were it " not

“ not for fear of the soldiers, who followed me every MARCH.
 “ where, which prevented them. For in case they ^{1721.}
 “ should not place the soldiers in the same chamber
 “ with themselves and me, and entertain them with
 “ every thing to their liking, they were capable of ac-
 “ cusing them of having a clandestine commerce, of
 “ great importance, with me, or other suspicious ne-
 “ gotiations, which would not fail of costing them con-
 “ siderable sums of money, and possibly might prove
 “ their entire ruin*.” It is true, the Fathers Jesuits,
 could not alledge such fears of the soldiers of my
 guard as the merchants; their belonging to the court
 put them on quite another footing than the ordinary
 rank of people were upon; but they pretended, that,
 as they were foreigners, they were obliged to act with
 great caution, in order to prevent suspicion†. This

* The Princes of the house of the TAR-
 TARS, who at present reign in CHINA, have
 learned, at the expence of their predecessors,
 that they ought not to depend too much on
 the fidelity of the CHINESE; for this rea-
 son, all the military of the empire is, in a
 manner, composed of MONGALL TARTARS,
 who, on that account, enjoy considerable pri-
 vileges; which makes them very insolent and
 almost insupportable to the CHINESE. And
 as the number of these TARTARS were not
 deemed sufficient to curb the CHINESE, con-
 sidering the vast extent of the empire, the

late Bogdoi-Chan found it necessary, in or-
 der to augment their number, to make a law,
 whereby all the TARTAR MONGALLS, men,
 or women, who should marry with CHI-
 NESE, were obliged to bring up their chil-
 dren according to the customs of the MON-
 GALLS, and to teach them the MONGALLS
 language; and, that by means of this precau-
 tion, all those children should be deemed na-
 turalized MONGALLS, and enjoy the privi-
 leges of native MONGALLS.

† This was but an excuse of the Jesuits,
 to prevent the visits of Mr. de LANGE, whose

did

MARCH. did not surprize me at all, in regard to a nation, the
 1721. genius of which I already had a tolerable knowledge of.

The affairs I had to manage were of a very difficult nature; and in all countries the entering properly into such ought to be the principal care; but I, nevertheless, flattered myself that this unpromising aspect, at my entering on my functions, would take a more favourable turn, as soon as the Bogdoi-Chan should receive the credentials I had from the Emperor, my master.

The 22d, my Mandarins came together to see me, and to know what I had to propose to the council; upon which I requested them

“ 1. To put the Allegamba, or president of the
 “ council for foreign affairs, in mind, in my name, that
 “ they had let my credentials, from the Emperor my
 “ master, remain in my hands beyond the usual time;
 “ and that I waited, through his hands, the order of
 “ the Bodgoi-Chan, to appoint when he would please
 “ to receive them.

“ 2. To acquaint the president, that I had resolved
 “ to hire a house for myself, near the quarters of the

residing at PEKIN could not be very agree-
 able to them; as it was to act in the affairs of
 a monarch who had turned all the Jesuits out

of his empire, and would suffer no other RO-
 MAN CATHOLIC missionaries, but the CA-
 PUCHINS, to reside in his dominions.

“RUSSIANS, against the arrival of the caravan; to the MARCH.
 “end that the said quarters might be repaired, which, 1721.
 “from age, were gone to ruin, and might be entirely
 “beat down by the approaching rainy season; that, un-
 “less this reparation be made, the commissary would
 “not know where to lodge on his arrival at PEKIN, ex-
 “cept he would run risk of having the merchandises
 “damaged.

“3. To demand, for me, a passport, with the ne-
 “cessary escort, for some baggage, left at PEKIN dur-
 “ing the time of the ambassade, which I wanted to
 “send, out of hand, to SELINGINSKY*.” The said bag-
 “gage was some raw silk which I had bought on account
 of Mr. NICOLAI CHRISTIZY, with cash and effects that
 he had left in my hands†.

The answer, which I received immediately after
 from those gentlemen, contained in substance, “That
 “the Emperor himself having allotted that house for

* SELINGINSKY is the last fortress, be-
 longing to RUSSIA, towards the north-west
 of CHINA. This town is in the country
 of the MONGALLS, upon the east side of
 the river SELINGA, 30 days journey from
 PEKIN, in lat. 51. 30. The climate of SE-
 LINGINSKY is very mild, and the country
 about it very pleasant. The MONGALL
 TARTARS did not accustom themselves to
 the cultivation of ground, yet every thing

that is sown or planted there thrives ex-
 ceedingly.

† Through all RUSSIA they use hard-
 ly any other silk but that of CHINA, which
 is undoubtedly the best in the world; it
 being certain, that two pounds of CHINESE
 silk will go as far in manufacturing as three
 pounds of either PERSIAN or ITALIAN
 silk.

MARCH. " my quarters, no person would readily insinuate to
1721. " him that I was not satisfied with it; and that, with-
" out a special licence from him, no person in all PE-
" KIN, were it even the imperial Prince himself, would
" dare to let me a lodging, seeing it would thereby
" look as if the Bogdoi-Chan had not an inhabitable
" house for a foreigner." To which I replied, " That I
" made no doubt of so great a monarch's having hou-
" ses enough for lodging as many foreigners as he
" pleased; but, that I was well persuaded, when the
" Bogdoi-Chan should be informed of the condition
" that house was in, he would not oblige me to inha-
" bit it longer. Besides, that it was acting contrary to
" the common right, allowed by all the world, to re-
" strain a person, in a publick character, from hiring a
" lodging, with his own money, which might be com-
" modious for him, without a previous application to
" the Emperor himself." They answered me there-
upon " That the usages in EUROPE were not practised
" by them; and, as all the countries in the world had
" their particular customs, CHINA had her's, which
" would not be altered on any consideration whatever."
They also told me plainly, " That they could not write
" to the council on this subject, for that they knew of

“ a certainty, that no person durst make the proposi-
“ on to the Emperor.” Upon which having told them, MARCH. 1721.
“ That, as the case was so, I must submit to remain
“ there, till the impossibility of abiding longer may
“ force me to have recourse to other measures.” They,
of themselves, proposed to me, “ That the Chan
“ might be petitioned to allot me other quarters, with-
“ out alledging that my present quarters were in so mi-
“ serable a condition.” But seeing I did not pretend to
go out, but because it was in such a ruinous state, they
persisted in saying, it was impossible for them to make
the proposal to his Majesty on that footing.

The 23d, the aforesaid Mandarins came again to
me to acquaint me, “ That the president would consult
“ the other members of the council upon my creden-
“ tial letters, and would put the Emperor in remem-
“ brance, when occasion should offer. But, concerning
“ the sending away the baggage, I must have patience
“ till after the Emperor’s birth-day, seeing the prepara-
“ tions for its celebration so fully employed every body,
“ that nothing else was attended to, though of ever so
“ great consequence.”

APRIL.

A P R I L.

1721.

The 1st of this month, the Aloy, or master of the ceremonies of the Chan, invited me, by order of the Bogdoi-Chan, to come to CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE. Upon which I went there instantly. I was no sooner arrived, but I sent to notify the same to the said Aloy, and forthwith went to his apartment. I understood from him, that the Bogdoi-Chan had an intention to have admitted me that day to an audience, but that other affairs had unexpectedly interveened; he had ordered him to deliver to me a piece of the tapestry which they were at work upon for the Czar, in order that I might send it to RUSSIA by an express, and acquaint the Czar, that what pieces remained to be made should be ready in three months *. I laid hold of this opportunity of the passports and convoy necessary for the piece of tapestry, to request of this gentleman, “ That he would
 “ be so good as to manage it so, as that, when his Ma-
 “ jesty should give order for the passport and convoy
 “ for the piece of tapestry, I should, at the same time,
 “ be furnished with passports for the baggage above-

* The tapestry of CHINA is generally made of satin, embroidered with large figures of gold and silk; the colours very bright, but the designs not correct; they

are not adjusted to furnishing of rooms, unless bespoke on purpose, or composed of many different pieces.

APRIL.

1721.

“ mentioned, which I had to forward ; and that he
 “ would please to be at the trouble of informing him-
 “ self, when his Majesty would be pleased to receive
 “ my letters of credence from the Czar, with which I
 “ was charged.” Whereupon the Aloy desired me to
 remain at his lodgings, whilst he went to make the pro-
 posal to the Emperor; and, at his return, he acquaint-
 ed me, “ That his Majesty would, out of hand, give
 “ orders to the council, that they should furnish me
 “ with the passports and convoy necessary, as well for
 “ the tapestry as the baggage I wanted to send; but that
 “ it could not be till after the birth-day.” That as to
 the letters of credence, he did not find it proper to
 mention it to the Emperor, it appearing to him that
 his Majesty frequently thought of me, and would not
 forget my letters of credence †; and gave me, in some

† The late Emperor of CHINA, notwithstanding his great age, had so extraordinary a memory, till a little time before his death, that a FLEMISH JESUIT, who is yet at PEKIN, recounted to one in the retinue of Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, that, above 20 years ago, this monarch having shown him a wood-picker, asked him if there were such birds in their country; and, having answered yes, he asked its name in FLEMISH; that, some time after the arrival of Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, the Emperor, having cast his eye on such a bird, asked him then, also, if

such birds were in their country; and now answering, No, the Emperor asked him why he did not tell him the truth; and, if he did not remember, that, at such a time, he told him there were such birds in their country; upon which the father JESUIT declared, that he had been so long out of his own country, that he really did not know whether there was or not. The Emperor was very merry upon the JESUIT's having forgot his mother-tongue; and told him the bird's name in FLEMISH.

APRIL. measure, an assurance that the Chan would not long
1721. defer the receiving it. And then he made his excuses
~~~~~ that he could not longer wait on me, being obliged instantly to return to the court.

The 2d, according to custom, the birth-day of his Majesty should have been celebrated, with the utmost magnificence, at CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE; but, inasmuch as his Majesty was still displeased with his ministers, he only received the ordinary compliments on that occasion, without any other ceremony; after which every body retired to their own houses. I had, among others, the honour of paying my compliments to his Majesty on that occasion. That which appeared, to me, most worthy of observation, at that time, was 3000 old men, the youngest of which was above 60 years old; which, by express order of the Emperor, had been brought, to PEKIN, from all the provinces of the empire. They were all dressed in yellow, which is the colour of the imperial liveries, and marched, in parade, to CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE, where they ranged themselves in the court of the castle, and had the honour of making their compliments to the Emperor; after which his Majesty distributed to every one, without distinction, 4 laen of silver, and sent them home.

The



The same day, the parson of the church of ST. NICOLAS at PEKIN \*, presented me with a memorial of some debts which he had owing him, by diverse persons of that city, on account of the deceased Archimandrite; praying my assistance in the affair. APRIL. 1721.

The 3d, having received, from the council, the necessary passport for the courier I was to dispatch with the piece of tapestry, I dispatched him, the same day, under the escort of a CHINESE courier.

The 8th, some unknown people, having entered my house, told me, by my interpreter, " That they had bought for me a certain number of sheep; but, if I would not receive them in kind, they were ready to pay me half a laen of silver for every sheep." I returned them in the same manner I did the former, letting them know, " That some person of the college, which had the direction of the Emperor's magazines of provisions, must come to me to show me those

\* Those of the GREEK religion have but one church at PEKIN; but the ROMAN CATHOLICS have three churches very magnificently built, where there resort, on Sundays and Holidays, a number of people of all conditions, the ROMAN CATHOLIC religion being tolerated there; but it is remarkable, that the men do not uncover their heads during divine service, because it is a mark of infamy, among them, to have

the head uncovered; no women appear there, having a separate apartment in the churches. The late Emperor favoured the worship of the ROMISH church to such a degree, that he ordered that all the sons of Mandarins, who made their studies under the direction of the JESUITS, should be obliged to go, all Sundays and Holidays, to their churches; which gave great uneasiness to the CHINESE Bonzes.



APRIL. "who were to bring me provisions." They attempted  
1721. still, on several occasions, to bring in wood and other  
provisions, in the same way, to my house, without my  
being able to know who they were, or who sent them.

The 11th, I received the passport for the baggage  
of Mr. NICOLAI CHRISTIZY, which I dispatched two  
days after from PEKIN, under the escort of a CHINESE  
courier. The president of the council letting me  
know, at the same time, "That I ought not to send ma-  
ny of those expeditions, as long as the new treaty of  
commerce, between the two empires, was unratified  
in the accustomed forms; seeing it was not under-  
stood, that they consented to a continual passage, by  
small caravans; which I myself sufficiently knew the  
reasons for, having assisted at all the conferences held  
on that subject."

The 13th, I learned that the Bogdoi-Chan was about  
to set out instantly for IEGCHOLL, which is a town new-  
ly built, with a magnificent castle, without the great  
wall 440 ly, or two days by post, eastward of PEKIN,  
where he usually passes the fine season of the summer  
in hunting, and other country diversions.

The 14th, I mounted on horse-back to go to the  
president of the council; being arrived at the gate, the  
guard



guard made me wait till they had acquainted him of my being there; immediately after which he sent one of his servants to inform himself “Whether I came purely on a visit, or had occasion to speak to him about business; and, that in case I came about business, that I should communicate the same to his servant, that he might inform his master of the subject of it.” I made my compliments to the president by the messenger, and told him, “That I came to pay a visit to his master; but as to the business I came about, that concerned the master not the servant.” After which the same servant returning, told me, “That I would be welcome to his master\*.” Whereupon, entering into the court-yard, the president came out of his apartment to receive me; and having taken me by the hand, after some reciprocal compliments, he led me into an open saloon, where we sat down together, and were served with tea and milk, according to the CHINESE manner. After some time, I desired that he would put the Bogdoi-Chan in remembrance, that I had letters to present to him from the Czar, my master; and that I should be very glad to

\* In CHINA, when they go to see a Mandarin, of what order soever, upon business regarding his office, the Mandarin is obliged to put on the habit peculiar to his order; upon failure whereof, he is amerced in large fines.



APRIL. know if he would be pleased to receive them before  
1721. his departure. He answered me thereupon as the ma-

ster of ceremonies had done before, " That his Ma-  
" jesty was well informed of it, and would know him-  
" self when he would have time to receive them, with-  
" out being put in mind of it; and that, if we should  
" put his Majesty in remembrance of it, that would  
" look as if he or I wanted to prescribe the time of do-  
" ing it to his Majesty." I sought, by all ways possible,  
to engage him one way or other in this affair, but all  
in vain; and I was obliged to hold this for an answer;  
after which he added, " That if his Majesty had resolv-  
" ed not to receive my letter of credence, he would not  
" have consented to my residing at his court, in quality  
" of agent; and that Mr. de ISMAYLOFF having sufficient-  
" ly explained the reasons of my stay in PEKIN, these  
" letters could contain nothing very pressing." Upon  
which I replied to him, " That in EUROPE the monarchs  
" were not accustomed, when the Czar wrote letters to  
" them, to let such a length of time pass without re-  
" ceiving them; nor take it amiss, from their ministers,  
" if they put them in mind of such important affairs;  
" that I never expected such an answer in CHINA; but  
" yet, as it was what I could not remedy, I must bear  
" it



“ it patiently, till such time as his Majesty was disposed  
“ to receive them.”

APRIL.

1721.

The 16th, I mounted again on horseback to go to see the Alegada, or first minister, in hopes of getting a resolution more favourable to my affair, than I got from the president of the council. Being arrived at his house, I was indeed admitted to come into his courtyard; but, as I had no desire to go into the rooms of his servants, I was obliged to remain in the court till they notified to him my being there. He, like the other, sent a servant to me, to inform himself of the reason of my coming. To whom I signified, that I wanted the honour of seeing him, and of acquainting him with an affair which I did not think proper to explain to a servant. The same servant returned very soon to me, saying, “ My master thanks you, Sir, for  
“ the trouble you have given yourself; he is very well,  
“ but it is not convenient for him to see you.”

The 17th, I was again in his neighbourhood; and having sent my interpreter to him to ask permission to see him for a moment; he sent me word, that it was impossible, because he was that instant going to his Majesty; and that he did not know when he should have time to speak with me. Whereupon, seeing this was



APRIL. an affair that could not be forced, I resolved to let it  
1721. ly dormant for some time.

The 19th, I went to see a GERMAN Father Jesuit; who, being an old acquaintance, and a friend of mine from my first journey to CHINA, made no scruple of telling me, that many of the principal Mandarins of CHINA much disapproved of the Chan's consenting to my remaining at PEKIN\*. But that as there was no person, in all the empire, that was bold enough to dare contradict the will of the Emperor, unless they would expose themselves to very great danger, it was very probable they would, by degrees, accustom themselves to my being there†. He said to me, also, that he had frequently sent his servant to me with his compliments; but that the guard at my door had as often turned him back, as a person who had no business at my house. Nevertheless, he did not think they would have been

\* The CHINESE regard their ancient laws and customs as sacred and inviolable; and it is not to be wondered at, that they, with great reluctance, suffer the residence of a RUSSIAN agent at PEKIN; as it is directly contrary to the fundamental constitutions of the empire; which absolutely forbid the CHINESE to go out of the empire, and the admission of foreigners to an abode in it.

† The frequent executions which the late Emperor of CHINA was obliged to cause to be made, in the early part of his reign, in

order to keep the CHINESE quiet, occasioned such a dread in all the CHINESE, that the greatest lords of the empire could not approach his person without fear and trembling. Nevertheless, this monarch was far from being a tyrant, in reality; for he was a true lover of justice, and spared the blood of his subjects as much as possible. He had forbid, under the most severe penalties, the putting a criminal to death, for what crime soever, unless he should confirm and sign the sentence of death with his own hand.



so untractable, if he would have given them a piece of money. He most strongly enjoined to take no notice of what he told me; for he would by no means appear in this affair, it was sufficient that I was informed by him, in order to take my measures thereupon when occasion offered.

APRIL.

1721.

There are at PEKIN a great number of small merchants, or rather pedlars, who, as soon as they hear of any foreigners being arrived from RUSSIA, or other parts, bring to their quarters all sorts of merchandise, which they get partly from the brokers, and partly from other houses of different sorts of people, who may have any goods which they would be willing to dispose of; and it is often better to deal with these pedlars, for all sorts of curiosities, and for made silks, than with the shop-keepers; for which reason I bid some of these people bring to my house, from time to time, what they should light upon most curious in its kind, whether in rich silks, or jewels, or other goods of value, to the end that I might acquire a competent knowledge of all the sorts of merchandise to be got in this city. Upon which they represented to me, that I might well believe that they sought nothing more than to gain a little money, it being their trade; and of consequence



APRIL. quence they would not fail of doing as I desired them,

1721. if my house was occupied by different persons; because

what goods were not liked by one might find a buyer in another, and so they might probably always sell something; but as I alone occupied the house, and had such a numerous guard at the gate, they did not know how to do it; because, before they were permitted to enter my house, they were obliged to agree with the soldiers of the guard, how much they were to pay them on their going out; and, whether they sold any thing or not, they were equally obliged to pay the money they agreed to for the permission of entry.

The 20th, I send to demand of the Mandarins, who had the care of my affairs, "If it was with their knowledge that the soldiers of the guard that were at my gate, did not permit any person to enter my house without their giving them money? They, in answer, let me know, "That they knew nothing of the matter; but they would not fail to make inquiry, and if they found, that the soldiers, through ignorance, had done such a thing, they would put things in better order for the future." And I found that they had spoke to the officers of the guard, who told them, "They had strict orders to guard this house, and take particular  
" care



“care that the common people, who are generally very APRIL.  
“insolent, should not find means of coming into the 1721.  
“court-yard to steal any thing; and as they were to be  
“answerable, they were obliged to use the precautions  
“necessary, to this effect.” They came to report this  
to me, as an unanswerable argument. But I assured  
them, that whenever the guard admitted people to  
enter my house, during the day-time, I would not make  
them answerable for any robbery that might hap-  
pen at my house; for that I had a sufficient number  
of my own servants to drive out of my court-yard any  
persons who should dare to come there without having  
business.

It must be observed, on this occasion, that the CHI-  
NESE have the custom of explaining themselves but  
once on one proposal; and, having once given an an-  
swer upon a matter, whatsoever it be, they always hold  
themselves upon this answer, as an infallible argument;  
so that if you turn an affair into twenty different lights,  
to convince them, by one means or other, of their er-  
ror, or to make them alter their sentiments, it is all  
lost trouble; they firmly holding by their first word.  
And it is a general rule with the CHINESE, high and  
low, in all they have to do with foreigners; in so much  
that



APRIL. that every time a propofal is made to them, which  
1721. their intereft or vanity may incline them not to ap-  
prove, it may be certainly depended upon, that, after  
infinite difputes, you will be obliged to receive the firft  
words, which they pronounced in the beginning, for an  
anfwer, be it agreeable or disagreeable.

The 21<sup>st</sup>, I fpoke with the brigadier of my guard  
about this affair, who is a perfon generally efteemed  
by all the people of merit in the empire; fome years  
paft, he had filled the greateft pofts of the ftate, but  
was difgraced, and made brigadier on account of the  
bad conduct of his brother. I can truly fay, this is  
the moft worthy man I have known in CHINA, full of  
honour, reafon, and probity; and the Fathers Jefuits  
agreed with me, that there was not his equal in all this  
great empire. He difapproved very much the conduct  
of the officers and foldiers of my guard; but he repre-  
fented to me, at the fame time, “ That having precise  
“ orders from the Emperor, that all forts of the lower  
“ people fhould be prevented from entering or leaving  
“ my houfe at their pleafure, to the end that no insult  
“ might be offered me; he could not avoid giving the  
“ fame orders to the officers of my guard; but to pre-  
“ vent the abufe of his orders, for time to come, he  
“ would



“ would come regularly twice a-week to my quarters, APRIL.  
“ to have an eye on their behaviour.” Which gave me 1721.  
opportunities of making a particular friendship with  
him; but neither mine, nor all the threats which the  
brigadier gave to the officers and foldiers on this head,  
nor the rigorous treatment he made them feel on feve-  
ral occasions, could get the better of the infatiable a-  
varice of these military people, who look upon it as  
their right to exact contributions of those who trade  
with foreigners. In short, it would have become insup-  
portable to me, to be at the mercy of the chicanes that  
this pretended guard of honour studied to vex me  
with every day, if I had not had the hope that my cre-  
dential letters would be very soon received; and that  
I should then be able to do my affairs with more satis-  
faction.

The 23d, my interpreter having met one of our  
debtors, he put him in mind of the promises he had  
made to Mr. de ISMAYLOFF; and assured him, that, if  
he deferred satisfying me, he should be arrested, seeing  
this affair would not allow of more prolongation. Up-  
on which he promised to come to me, in two or three  
days, with his comrades, and to endeavour, to the ut-  
most of his power, not to come empty handed.



APRIL. The 26th, two of these debtors came to my house  
 1721. with a CHINESE merchant who was their security; they  
 told me that one of their partners, named DZCHUN-  
 DZCHAN, who was indebted to us in 1400 laen of fine  
 silver, died the year before. But, as I was apprised that  
 three of them were firmly bound in such case, one for  
 the other, which they could not themselves gainsay,  
 this sum must be brought to the account of the survivors.  
 Of these two debtors which came to my house,  
 the one, named DZCHIN-BORGHE, was still in arrear 700  
 laen, according to what my interpreter said, but he ac-  
 knowledged no more than 650 laen; the other, called  
 DZCHIN-SANGA, was to deliver 340 thun of kitaika \* on  
 the arrival of the next caravan at PEKIN, and this by  
 virtue of an obligation which he had given to the  
 commissary GUSAITNICOFF, payable to him, or order.  
 I told them, " That though I had not in my hands  
 " the obligation he had given to Mr. GUSAITNI-  
 " COFF, that need not hinder their paying the debt  
 " to me, if not all at once, at least, by little and lit-  
 " tle, according as their abilities would enable them,  
 " seeing this money was to come into the treasury

\* A sort of glazed cotton, calendered and smoothed, which they make in CHINA, of all sorts of colours, whereof they sell great quantities through all the NORTHERN ASIA.



“ of his Czarish Majesty, and that, as soon as they  
 “ paid the whole, I would give them an obligation of APRIL.  
 “ indemnity, which would make their obligations to 1721.  
 GUSAITNICOFF of no value †. Upon which they re-  
 plied, “ That they could not object to this expedient,  
 “ and that conformable to their promises to the envoy  
 “ extraordinary, to give me entire satisfaction there-  
 “ upon, they would not fail to do it, so as I should re-  
 “ ceive part of their debts before the end of the  
 “ month.” These promises continued, from day to day,  
 without any part of them being fulfilled; and as I knew,  
 by my own experience, that there are no where worse  
 paymasters than in CHINA, unless they can be compel-  
 led by force, I was obliged to fall on other methods.

M A Y.

The 1st, I delivered to my Mandarins two memori-  
 als on the subject of those debts, and the debts of the  
 parson of ST. NICHOLAS, desiring they would present  
 them to the council, and communicate to me the an-

† The commerce between RUSSIA and CHINA is, at present, a monopoly belong-  
 ing to the treasury of SIBERIA; no o-  
 ther subjects of RUSSIA being to concern  
 themselves in it, on pain of death, un-  
 less employed by the crown, and for ac-  
 count of the crown; though it is often e-  
 vaded by connivance of the Weywodes on  
 the frontier places. By virtue of the last

treaty, they can send no more than one ca-  
 ravan a-year, from SIBERIA TO PEKIN,  
 which doth not consist of more than 200  
 persons; instead of 1000 and more, which  
 they amounted to heretofore, and which were  
 subsisted at the charge of the Chan of CHI-  
 NA, whilst they were on the territories of  
 CHINA; but now they are to subsist upon  
 their own charges.



MAY. fwer which they should receive on them. The same

1721. day my Mandarins put into my hands 82 laen and 26

fun of fine silver; saying, "That his Majesty had ordered this sum to be paid me for the value of the sheep, fish, fowls, and milk, for two months past; and for the time to come, every 9 days, a clerk from the imperial treasury would bring me 12 laen and 37 fun, in payment for the said provisions; and that the other allowances, which I was to receive in kind, should be likewise sent me by a clerk of the magazines from whence they were taken." So that all I should receive for my monthly allowance, in money and provisions, would amount, according to the current prices, to 48 laen; but they allowed me no forage for my horses, which is a considerable article at PEKIN, where forage is extremely dear. After which, during the rest of this day, the weather was very bad, a great deal of rain, with mighty gusts of wind; the old house, where I was lodged, could no longer stand the bad weather; all the wall of one side of my chamber fell, about midnight, into the court-yard; which made me very apprehensive for what remained. I was obliged to retire into an adjoining chamber, to avoid, in some measure, the danger to which I found myself exposed;



as this chamber, though a sorry place, was very low, I found myself in less danger; besides, it was not quite so old and infirm as the other.

MAY.

1721.

The next day, the 2d of this month, I advertised my Mandarins of what had happened; praying them to cause immediate reparation to be made, if not of the whole house, of that apartment where I lodged at least. Whereupon they sent to assure me it should be done without loss of time.

But, on the 4th, they changed their note; and let me know that they could do nothing in it before the departure of the Emperor, seeing the college, which had the care of the buildings, were so much employed about the court, that they could give no attention to other affairs for the present. Whereupon I offered to repair it by people I would hire on my own expences. But they wanted to impose upon me in the price. And the Mandarins protested to me, that it was an affair that might be their utter ruin, if the Emperor should come to know that they had consented to my repairing, with my money, a house that belonged to him; but they assured me, they should set to work upon it very soon.

The 8th, the Bogdoi-Chan departed for JEGCHOLL;

and,



MAY. and, having the honour to attend him, on this occasion, to 15 ly from PEKIN, his Majesty asked me, “ If I  
 1721. expected the caravan soon.” I answered thereupon,  
 “ That I had not received any advices from the com-  
 “ missary; but, nevertheless, I computed that the cara-  
 “ van might be at PEKIN in two months from that  
 “ time.” Whereupon he asked me, “ If I would not  
 “ come and pass the time, with the court, at JEG-  
 “ CHOLL.” I received such a gracious invitation with all  
 due submission; promising to come to pay my devoirs  
 to his Majesty at JEGCHOLL as soon as possible \*. But,  
 on my returning to PEKIN, the governor of the city let  
 me know, “ That I could not follow the Emperor, be-  
 “ fore his Majesty had sent the necessary orders to him  
 “ and the council to give me post-horses, and the es-  
 “ cort of Mandarins, which I should have occasion for  
 “ in this journey.” In the mean time, I made several  
 agreements, with diverse persons, for different sorts of  
 japanned ware, which his Czarish Majesty wanted to  
 have, which I could not get at the usual price, because

\* The late Emperor of CHINA was extremely affable and gracious towards EUROPEANS, more especially to those who excelled in any science. He was taller than usual for people of his country; and not to

be known, either by his complexion, or features, to be of TARTAR extraction; it was only to be observed, that his cheek-bones, under his eyes, were a little rising and prominent, like the MONGALLS.



those who supplied me with them, were obliged to give a great part of what they gained on them every day to the soldiers of my guard, for the liberty of entering my house. MAY.  
1721.

The 10th, my Mandarins being come to see me, one of them took leave of me; being, as he told me, named by the court to go, in quality of envoy, to the Delay-Lama †; and the other gave me positive assurances, that, early the next morning, the workmen should begin to repair my quarters; and that they had already provided the materials necessary for that purpose. In regard to my two memorials, concerning the debts above mentioned, he gave me for answer, “That the president would not receive them; not finding it proper to meddle with such trifling things; as he had before hand told Mr. de ISMAYLOFF himself, that the council would absolutely not embarrass themselves with any affair of debts; that, nevertheless, he had ordered his Mandarin to press the debtors to discharge their debts, in case they were in a condition of paying such sums.”

† The Delay-Lama is the sovereign pontiff of the KALMUCKS, MONGALS, and many other idolatrous nations north of the INDIES. He is adored as a god by all these people; and, by them, believed to be im-

mortal. He lives in a convent near the city of POTALA, in the kingdom of TANGUTE, upon an high mountain, south of the deserts of XAME, toward the frontiers of CHINA. *Vide Hist. Genealog. des TARTARES.*



MAY.

1721.

The 20th, my Mandarin coming, stopped at my gate, and having learned that my apartment remained still in the same condition, he sent one of his servants to make his excuses to me, for not coming to see me; alledging, that the great heat approaching at noon would, he feared, incommode him. But I caused him to betold, for my whole answer, "That I did not understand such a compliment; and that I wished, with all my heart, that, in time to come, he would dispense with coming to my house at all." Upon this answer he thought fit to come himself to me, and to complain much of the negligence of the college, which had the care of the buildings, in not adverting to the repair of my house, notwithstanding he had wrote to them, several times, on the subject, in the most pressing terms. I demanded of him, "What he believed the Czar, my master, would think of such usage as he showed me; and, if he was not afraid, that, in time, he might be made responsible for such treatment." But he, laughing, told me, "That there passed many other things with them, and of more importance than this was, without daring to carry complaints to the Chan, and he did not doubt but that it was the same at our court." Nevertheless the brigadier of my guard,

on



on being informed of the affair, went to the Mandarins of that college, and threatened them with his going himself to acquaint the Emperor, that, by their negligence, they contributed to the diminution of his glory in foreign countries, if they did not, without further delay, cause my house to be repaired the very next day.

MAY.

1721.

The 25th, At length there came workmen to put my apartment into an habitable state. The same day one of our debtors, named DZCHIN-SANGA, brought me 50 thun of kitaika; but I saw no appearance of getting any thing from the others, they being very poor and indigent; and I perceived that the proceedings of our Mandarin, with them, tended more to get some little presents from them to himself, from time to time, than seriously to press them to the discharge of our debt.

In the months of June, July, and a part of August, there passed nothing material regarding me, either at the court, or with the ministry; all those of any distinction being gone to partake of country diversions. Wherefore, I shall fill this vacation by a faithful report of the observations which I could make, during my stay at this court, as well myself, as by some of my



1721. friends, of the present state of trade in the city of PEKIN; but I must, at the same time, acknowledge to the reader, that there is much wanting to make the observations such as they ought to be, and might have been if I had not been so streightened, and if they had let me enjoy the means of informing myself thoroughly of things.

The people of KOREA, who are tributary to CHINA, come twice a year to PEKIN, \* viz. in the months of March and August, to the number of 40 or 50 persons, as well to pay their tribute to the Emperor as to carry on their trade; which consists principally in the following merchandises.

A sort of large paper made of raw-silk, something like the large paper for wrapping up things in EUROPE. They make use of this paper in CHINA, for windows, in place of glafs.

Paper, with gold or silver figures, for hanging their chambers.

\* KOREA is a peninsula, eastward of the grand wall of CHINA; it is contiguous, on the west, to the province of LEOTANG of CHINA, and on the north to the EASTERN MONGALLS. The KOREANS are, from time immemorial, tributaries of CHINA, who treat them very hardly, not permitting them

any commerce with strangers. Nevertheless, they do not fail to come clandestinely with their goods, by the sea of JAPAN, to the river AMOOR, and thence by the NAUNDA to the city NAUN, to traffick with the MONGALLS, and indirectly with the RUSSIANS.



All sorts of large fans, of different fashions. 1721.

Mats, very neat and fine, which they use in summer in place of matrasses.

Cut tobacco, very small, for smoking, much esteemed in CHINA, and preferred to that of their own growth.

Stripped cotton-stuffs.

A sort of furs which the RUSSES call chorky, and which they call colouk in SIBERIA; it is in great abundance in KOREA; they sell a great deal of it in PEKIN.

A sort of dry-fish, which they get from a certain large shell-fish in the sea of JAPAN.

It is with these commodities that they trade; and although they may, in a manner, be considered as the same nation with the CHINESE, and in some degree their subjects, yet they do not enjoy the least liberty during their abode at PEKIN; all communication and conversation with foreigners being absolutely forbidden them, and much restricted with the CHINESE themselves; insomuch, that the CHINESE are not less suspicious of them, than of any other nation whatsoever. As they cannot make by their trade any thing to a considerable amount, they generally bring with them to PEKIN large sums in silver, in SPANISH pieces of eight,



1721. and in DUTCH dollars, which are looked upon, in CHINA, as inferior to the fine silver of CHINA, which they call the Chan's silver, by 5, 6, or 7 *p. cent.* which shows, that the inhabitants of KOREA have some trade with the islands of JAPAN, or, at least, with the islands lying between JAPAN and KOREA; although it is absolutely forbid the inhabitants of that country to have the least communication, or commerce, with other nations, or to admit foreign ships into their ports; having, for that end, a Mandarin always residing in KOREA, to have an eye on the proceedings of that nation. With this money they buy, at PEKIN,

The finest raw-silk.

A sort of damask, called by the RUSSES goly, and by the CHINESE couty-toanza, that is damask of KOREA; because, at first, the KOREANS alone bought that sort of damask.

A sort of stuff mixed with silk, fit for linings, called by the CHINESE fanfa.

Tea and china-ware.

All sorts of dishes of white copper, for household use.

Cotton.

They likewise buy the tails of fables, to border their caps and the collars of their robes.



It is likely that they trade into other parts with the silk and damask, which they carry from PEKIN, seeing they take away much greater quantities than the consumption of their own country can require. 1721.

When there is no RUSSIAN caravan, nor any of that nation at PEKIN, they quarter those of KOREA in the habitation appointed for the RUSSES; but when there are RUSSES in this city they give the KOREANS other quarters: for this reason the CHINESE call this house COUTY COANNE, or magazine of the KOREANS, when it is occupied by the KOREANS; and URUSSA COANNE, or magazine of the RUSSES, when occupied by people of that nation.

When the KOREANS, whether deputies from that country or merchants, arrive at PEKIN, there are two Mandarins forthwith named to go to their lodgings to observe who goes in to them, or comes out from them; and to examine the cause of their coming, and how they became acquainted with the KOREANS: they likewise place guards all around their quarters, to prevent any person from having private access to them. When any of this nation go abroad, upon any affair, the guard follows them every where, with large whips, to prevent any person from joining them in the street; and



1721. and they dare not go to see any person without permission of the guard. As the inhabitants of KOREA are not used to ride on horseback, and are afraid to mount a horse, for fear of accidents, they give them a guard of infantry, who have no other arms, when they are in garrison, than their whips. Besides all these steps, full of suspicion, they fix, at their quarters, an edict of the court, signifying, that all persons whatsoever are forbid to enter their house without the knowledge of the Mandarin, deputed for that purpose, who, after examining them as to what they have to do there, takes notice of their names, and sends a soldier into the house with them to observe what passes. It is a very profitable commission for those Mandarins who are deputed to guard the KOREANS; for they always farm the privilege of trading with them to that company of CHINESE merchants who offer the most money for it, which sometimes amounts to a considerable sum; and it is by no means permitted to any other merchants, besides the members of this company, to trade, for that time, with the KOREANS.

The CHINESE have not, in a manner, any trade with the INDIES, \* excepting some small dealings they may

\* CHINA is separated from the country of the Great Mogul by sandy deserts, impassable.



have on the frontiers of the neighbouring states; but it was impossible for me to get to the knowledge of what those trades consisted in; for, among a thousand people of the inhabitants of PEKIN, it is rare to find one person who hath the least knowledge of any thing that passes without its gates. It is true that the CHINESE do carry on trade, sometimes at BENGAL, to the PHILIPPINE islands, to BATAVIA, and even to GOA; but that is not brought about but by stealth, by the connivance of the Mandarin governors of the sea ports, obtained by means of a round sum of money, without the knowledge of the court; besides, it is absolutely forbid, to every subject of the empire, to go into foreign parts, upon what occasion soever, without a permission, or an order, from the Emperor or the government\*.

The BUCHARIANS come also to PEKIN, but without observing any stated times†. They bring large round

sable for merchants; and the other provinces of INDIA by mountains, are very difficult to pass; which in a manner hinders all commerce between those two empires.

\* The greatest part of the CHINESE, who are dispersed in several places of the EAST INDIES, for the sake of commerce, are the posterity of those who left CHINA when the MONGALL TARTARS made themselves masters of that empire; and they have no other than clandestine communication

with their CHINESE countrymen. They are easily known by their long hair, which is natural to them; instead of which the CHINESE, subjects to the TARTARS, are obliged, under pain of death, to cut their hair short, like the KALMUCKS and MONGALLS, who have all their heads shaven, except a tuft of hair on the top of their head, which they preserve of the natural length of their hair.

† There are two BUCHARIAS, the Great and the Little. The GREAT BUCHARIA is

cornelians



1721. cornelians, of a very good colour, which they barter, with the CHINESE, against damasks, kitaika, tea, tobacco, CHINA-ware, and silver. They string these on small filken lines, in the manner of beads; and they are worn by Mandarins of the first orders, when they appear at court, or in the colleges, in their habits of ceremony; wearing one row of them about their necks, which hangs down on their bellies. They bring also musk, rough diamonds, and many other sorts of precious stones; but, as I was informed, of no great value; because it is rare to find, among the CHINESE, any who will risque the laying out a considerable sum for a fine stone. The CHINESE polish these stones, after their

situated between PERSIA and the country of the Grand Mogul, about the 40th degree of latitude; this is the country of the USBECK TARTARS, who are Mahometans. The LITTLE BUCHARIA is situated to the east of the Great, and extends to the frontiers of CHINA, on the side of the desert XAMA, and kingdom of TIBET, which is their confine to the south; this last is subject to the Kontaysha, grand Chan of the KALMUCKS. The BUCHARIANS are a particular nation, which have no connection neither with the Mahometan nor Pagan TARTARS, nor with any other people of those parts. They do not know themselves whence they draw their origin. Nevertheless, they make profession of the Mahometan religion.

They occupy the towns of the TWO BUCHARIAS, and only employ themselves about their commerce. Those of the GREAT BUCHARIA carry on their trade in the dominions of the Great Mogul, in PERSIA, and in SIBERIA, and are tributary to the Chan of the USBECKS. Those of the LITTLE BUCHARIA trade into CHINA, into the kingdoms of TIBET and TANGUT, and with the KALMUCKS and MONGALLS their neighbours; these last pay tribute to the Kontaysha. The BUCHARIANS have many customs and ceremonies, much like those of the JEWS, nor is their dialect, physiognomy, and size much unlike them; which may give occasion to many reflections.



own fashion, in order to make them proper for ornamenting the heads of the fair sex. 1721.



I had no opportunity of being acquainted with any of this nation, not being allowed liberty sufficient for that end; and on their part, they dared not run the risk of coming to my house, for fear of the guard at my gate; so that I cannot give an exact account concerning them.

They also bring to PEKIN gold-dust\*, which the CHINESE buy commonly at the price of 5, 6, to 7 laen of silver per laen of gold-dust, because it is unrefined; they assure me that it is very fine when purified, and is then equal to the gold of the Chan.

These TARTARS dwell in the provinces of CHAMILL and TURFAN†, under the protection of the Emperor of

\* The gold which the BUCHARIANS bring to CHINA comes from the high mountains which separate the dominions of the Great Mogul from the GRAND TARTARY. All these mountains abound in rich mines, of all sorts, but none of them are wrought; nevertheless they make very considerable gains annually, by the great quantities of gold-dust which the mighty torrents, formed by the rains in the spring, along with the snows melting, bring down with them into the neighbouring valleys. For the inhabitants of these mountains, together with the KALMUCKS, who encamp with their cattle in the adjacent plains, come afterwards to gather these grains of

gold, in the pits which the torrents have made in their passage, and barter them, with the BUCHARIANS, against all sorts of small things for which they may have occasion in their way of life.

† The provinces of CHAMILL and TURFAN are situated to the west of the desert of XAME, towards the 40th degree of latitude. They make a part of the LITTLE BUCHARIA, and have been subject hitherto to the Kontaysha Grand Chan of the KALMUCKS; but a few years since the CHINESE, joined by the MONGALLS, have possessed themselves of it, after having driven out the KALMUCKS.



1721. CHINA, in confideration of a moderate tribute, which they pay him annually. In return they buy at PEKIN,

Hides of RUSSIA to make boots.

Fox-skins, red and brown.

Squirrel-skins, white and grey.

Beaver-skins.

Sables, and other furs.

Kitaika.

Cotton, like the woolens of EUROPE, of which they use part themselves, and sell part to the KALMUCKS\*, their neighbours; they also take

Tea.

Tobacco. and of

The smallest CHINA-ware; of all which in pretty large quantities.

Besides the goods I have above specified, I know of no others which they bring to PEKIN.

The most valuable furniture of lackered ware, viz. cabinets, chairs, tables, baskets, and other things of

\* The KALMUCKS occupy a great part of the NORTHERN ASIA; they are divided into three principal branches, under one sovereign Chan, whom they call the Kontaysha; they have no fixed habitation, but always live in tents. Though the KALMUCKS are indisputably the bravest of the TARTARS,

they are, nevertheless, desirous of living peaceably; contenting themselves with the subsistence which their cattle can afford them, and do no harm to any, unless they are hurt by them; but, when once irritated, they become irreconcilable enemies. Their religion is that of the Delay-Lama,



that sort, as also the richest porcelain-ware, come from JAPAN \*. For, when the Emperor sends any person to JAPAN, in a public character, most of the princes and great men of the court seldom fail to engage him to bring them some of those things at his return. Some times they find means to bring these things into CHINA clandestinely; but that is very seldom. This is the reason that the commodities of JAPAN are not always to be had at PEKIN, unless a man would pay an exorbitant price; nevertheless they are found there some times reasonably enough; because seldom a year passes that the Emperor doth not amerce some or other of the great lords in very considerable fines, which obliges them to raise all the money they can on their moveables and immoveables; and whoever hath money lying by him doth, on these occasions, lay it out to great advantage, and buy the most curious and valuable things for little money †.

\* All merchandise of JAPAN is contraband in CHINA; which is the reason they cannot be brought into RUSSIA, with the caravans from CHINA, at least without very great risk. The small quantity of JAPAN goods, which are clandestinely brought into CHINA, being kept very private, and paid for at very dear rates by the CHINESE themselves.

† It seems to be a favourite maxim, adopted in all the eastern courts, to wink at all the vile practices, and rapacious impositions, of the ministers; and, when they have well plucked and drained the substance of the people, the prince then squeezes them dry for his own use.



1721.

After the lackered ware of JAPAN, that of the province of FOKIEN is looked upon as the best; but none of it comes to PEKIN, because the great lords of CHINA oppress the merchants to a great degree, and take their goods from them, upon many frivolous pretences, without leaving them the least hopes of ever obtaining any payment. For this reason, all merchants, and others of any lucrative trade, at PEKIN, have fallen into the custom of putting themselves under the protection of some one or other of the Princes of the blood, or other great lords, or ministers of the court; and, by this means, with the assistance of a round sum of money, paid annually to their protectors, they are able to get clear of the extortions of the Mandarins, and some times of those of the common soldiers. For, without such a powerful protection, a merchant must be an undone man at PEKIN, where every one thinks they have an undoubted right to form pretensions upon a man that lives by trade. And, if any of them are so imprudent as to attempt obtaining satisfaction, by the way of justice, they fall from bad to worse; for the Mandarins of justice, after having drained from them all they can, seldom fail of ordering the goods, taken from them unjustly, to be brought to the college;



college; but he must be a cunning fellow indeed, who shall be able ever to get them from thence. 1721.

They have, at PEKIN, a people dexterous enough at lackering, but their works fall far short of those of JAPAN and FOKIEN; which may be attributed to the difference of climate; and it is for this reason that the lackered work made at PEKIN is always much cheaper than the other. Nevertheless, the lackered work made at PEKIN infinitely exceeds any work of that kind made in EUROPE.

The ships which arrive every year at CANTON, from ENGLAND, FRANCE, HOLLAND, DENMARK, and other parts, generally bring the following sorts of merchandise.

Silver of different coins.

All sorts of fine cloth.

Camblets.

Woolen stuffs.

Fine HOLLAND-linen.

Standing clocks and watches.

Looking-glasses of all sizes.

Mathematical instruments.

Etwys from ENGLAND.

Pencils.

EUROPEAN paper of all sorts.

Diffé-



1721.

Different sorts of milliner-wares

Some sorts of EUROPEAN liquors, especially wine.

A good part of those merchandises are distributed, in presents, among the Mandarins of the government of that city; of the rest, the EUROPEAN merchants generally make a very considerable profit. They employ the silver these bring in purchasing diverse sorts of goods, by virtue of an agreement made before hand; they carry away with them from thence,

Raw silk.

Damasks wrought according to draughts furnished to them.

Wrought silks.

Lacked ware.

Tea, green and bohea.

Badians, a seed having a taste much like aniseed.

Canes. and

CHINA-ware made according to models given them.

They also some times bring away gold, but very seldom, because they generally get it cheaper in the INDIES. They also find at CANTON pretty valuable stones, except diamonds, but not in any great quantities.

They make the best silk-brocades of CHINA, that are brought



brought to EUROPE, in the provinces of QUOANTUNG and FOKIEN. 1721.

The silver which they bring from EUROPE to CANTON is received at the same rate as that brought from KOREA to PEKIN; and they have the advantage of buying their goods, at CANTON, from 30 to 40 per cent. cheaper than they could do at PEKIN.

The last year there arrived at CANTON a FRENCH commissary, belonging to the new INDIA company established in PARIS\*, who obtained leave of the court to reside there for time to come; but, when he wanted to dispatch the ship loaden with merchandise, he met with so many obstacles at the custom-house, and from the government, doubtless, to draw more money from him, notwithstanding he had already made sufficient presents, that at length, despairing to see an end of these impositions, he gave orders to the captain of the ship to weigh anchor, and depart, in spite of those people; which was done as he desired. But he was obliged, to avoid being very ill treated on this occasion, to take the CHINESE habit, and to retire to a convent of DOMINICANS, at the distance of 2 ly from CANTON†; where

\* The MISSISSIPPI company.

† There are many ROMAN CATHOLIC convents in CHINA, which, in the time of the late Emperor of CHINA, had much the same immunities as the convents in EUROPE en-



1721. he kept himself incognito, till such time as the FRENCH JESUITS, at PEKIN, had found means, by the force of presents, to obtain liberty for him to appear openly, with two or three domesticks, and remain there till the court should otherwise direct; on the condition that he and his servants should wear the CHINESE habit. Nevertheless I was afterwards informed, that the Mandarins of the government of CANTON let no opportunity escape them of chagreening him; infomuch, that he found himself obliged to re-imbark, the first opportunity that offered itself. They also had the last year at CANTON, a frigate from OSTEND, bearing the Emperor of GERMANY's colours.

For the rest, they carry to CHINA from EUROPE, and bring back from CHINA, a very great variety of toys, and different sorts of curiosities, upon which they make a very considerable profit; but these are so numerous that it is not possible to furnish a complete specification of them.

In regard to our commerce with CHINA, it is, at present, in a very languishing condition; and nothing in the world would bring more prejudice to our caravans,

joyed; no person durst enter but with the consent of the religious of the convent, unless by express order of the Emperor of CHINA.

than



than the commerce which is carried on at URG<sup>A</sup>\*; 1721. for from this place there is brought, monthly, and even weekly, to PEKIN, not only the same sorts of goods which our caravans bring, but of a better quality than those brought by our caravans; and in so great quantities, that the merchandises which the merchants of PEKIN, who go continually between PEKIN and URG<sup>A</sup>, to trade with our people, and the goods which the lamas of the MONGALLS † bring from their parts, amount every year to four or five times as much value as the caravans that come to PEKIN in the name of his Czarish Majesty. And I have been informed, by those who have been employed by the great men of PEKIN to buy their provision of furs at URG<sup>A</sup>, that there they can buy finer, and more valuable black foxskins, than they have ever seen in our caravan. I must add besides, that these great quantities of our mer-

\* The camp of the Chan of the western MONGALLS, who are tributaries of CHINA, is called URG<sup>A</sup>. This Prince encamps on the right of the river SELINGA, about 500 versts south of SELINGINSKY, towards the frontiers of CHINA; and though he doth not always encamp in the same place, yet he seldom quits this country without indispensable necessity. By virtue of the last convention of the frontiers, the RUSSIANS of SELINGINSKY might freely come to URG<sup>A</sup> to bar-

ter RUSSIA-hides, and the coarse woollen cloth of SIBERIA, against cattle; but, as under this pretext, they brought great quantities of valuable furs, which they sold against the merchandises of CHINA; this clandestine commerce much injured the trade of the caravans of SIBERIA.

† The priests of the western MONGALLS, and the KALMUCKS, are called lamas; there are different orders.



1721. chandises, brought from URGAL to PEKIN, do considerably lower the prices; the merchants of PEKIN, and the lamas of the MONGALS, who bring them to PEKIN, are always capable of affording them 4 or 5 per cent lower than the commissary of the caravan can, of which the reader will be easily convinced if he gives attention to what I am about to lay before him.

The RUSS merchants, and all other people, that come and go continually, between SELINGINSKY and URGAL, buy their goods where they find it most convenient; instead of which the commissary is obliged to receive those he brings with the caravan, out of his Majesty's treasury, from sworn appraisers of the treasury, who often set so high a price on them that they find it difficult to sell them for half the price valued at to them. Another advantage which those who go to trade to URGAL enjoy, is, that they make the journey thither in 10 or 12 days; and, beginning their traffick immediately on their arrival, they are ready to return in 2 or 3 days after; in place of which, the commissary, after having been at considerable expence, can, with difficulty enough, get to PEKIN in three months; and when he gets there, they keep him shut up 6 or 7 weeks, according to the maxims practised by the CHI-



NESE hitherto: in consequence whereof the abundance of merchandise of RUSSIA arrived at PEKIN obliges them still to spend several months in getting quit of theirs. And as by the last treaty they are obliged to maintain themselves, and all those belonging to the caravan, at their own proper expence, all these circumstances cannot fail of occasioning a very material difference in the balance of their trade. For, before they began to trade at URGA, a caravan, how large soever, was all sold off in three months, at the prices set by the commissary himself. Moreover all the CHINESE, who traded at that time with us, became rich; instead of which, all those who have traded with us since that time, have traded to their own loss, and may be deemed at present quite ruined. The expences of a journey to URGA are very trifling; for they can buy at SELINGINSKY as much provision for 10 roubles as will serve ten persons for a month; in place of which, 10 roubles will hardly serve them a week at PEKIN. Besides, those who go into CHINA to trade are obliged to buy forage for their horses, &c. in place of which, those who go to URGA to trade put their horses to grass, without costing them a farthing. The CHINESE merchants, on their side, who come to URGA to trade, are likewise at much less



1721. expence than the commissary; because they buy at PEKIN, and the towns through which they pass, tea, tobacco, rice, and other grains, ordinary damasks, kitai-ka, and other like merchandise, at a very low price; which they barter, on the road with the MONGALLS, against horses, sheep, and in a word, all sorts of cattle; insomuch, that as the private merchants make both their journey, out and home also, with infinite less expence than the commissary of a caravan, it cannot be otherwise, than that they can buy and sell their merchandise on much better terms than a commissary can, who is obliged to remain, with a number of attendants, in a city where living is so dear, as at PEKIN, a longer time than would serve a merchant at SELINGINSKY for making 4 or 5 journies to URGAL. In fine, when the caravan returns to RUSSIA, they find, after such great expences, that the quantity of CHINESE goods, brought to RUSSIA by private traders, is so very large that they must sell theirs at a very moderate price. All these circumstances well considered, it is easy to comprehend that, upon closing the accounts of the caravan, the profits cannot, at this time, be much more than the disbursements. But to return to our journal.

AUGUST.



The 14th, I received a letter from commissary ISTOPNIKOFF, dated from the river TOLA\*, 29th of July; by which he desired me to prevail on the council for the affairs of the MONGALLS†, to send him an assignment for 2000 laen of silver upon the custom-house of KALCHANNA‡; offering to return the same (for which he had pressing occasion, for the necessities of the caravan,) as soon as he should commence his trade at PEKIN; and he added, that the same favour had been formerly granted to commissary OSKOLKOFF.

The 15th, I went to the council, and having spoken of this affair with the Askinamma, or vice-president, he promised to consult the registers of the council upon it, and to write directly about it to the president

\* TOLA is a river in the country of the MONGALLS, which comes from the east, and enters the river ORCHON, about 250 versts south-east of SELINGINSKY. By virtue of the new regulation, the caravans of SIBERIA, who go to PEKIN, ought to enter on the territories belonging to CHINA upon their passing this river.

† The council for the affairs of the MONGALLS at PEKIN, is a college who have the care of every thing regarding the nation of the MONGALLS, as well those who are the hereditary subjects of the Emperor of CHINA, as, also, those who are only under the

protection of this empire. This college, at the same time, enters indirectly into the cognizance of all the affairs which regard the powers who border on CHINA, from the north-east to the west; whence it comes, that they are the court who have most to do of any in CHINA.

‡ KALCHANNA is the first CHINESE city, within the great wall, that you come to, in the road from SELINGINSKY to PEKIN. It is here that the duties, inwards and outwards, are paid by the RUSSIANS; and also for great part of the country of the MONGALLS.



AUGUST. at JEGCHOLL, and that he would communicate his answer to me.



The 17th, having sent my interpreter to the council to know if they had come to any resolution on this affair, he brought back the following answer, “ That  
“ they had indeed found, in the registers, that the  
“ council had formerly advanced money to the com-  
“ missary; but that the trade was an object of so little  
“ consequence with them, that they did not think it  
“ merited the council’s being incommoded with pro-  
“ posals of that sort.”

The 18th, a Mandarin came to me from the council, and notified to me, that his Majesty, calling to remembrance my being at PEKIN, had given orders to the council, that I should be escorted to JEGCHOLL by a Mandarin and some of the military. Whereupon I answered him, that I would be ready the next day, with my interpreter and two domesticks, if they would take care to provide the relays, which I should want, for the journey.

The 19th, all being ready for the journey, I left PEKIN very early in the morning.

The 21st, I arrived at JEGCHOLL, and repaired forthwith to the court; and having found the chamberlain

of



of the Chan, who is generally an eunuch\*, I prayed AUGUST.  
 him, according to the custom of the country, to in- 1721.  
 form himself, on my behalf, of the health of the Bog-  
 doi-Chan, and to inform his Majesty of my being there;  
 upon which his Majesty did me the favour of sending  
 to me a falver covered with all sorts of new fruits,  
 which were followed by another, charged with diverse  
 sorts of meat from his kitchen; he ordered me to be  
 told, at the same time, that he sent me those for my  
 refreshment, and that I would do well to keep my  
 chamber the rest of the day, to recover my fatigue  
 from the journey. The same evening some of the Fa-  
 ther Jesuits being come to see me, told me, that the  
 Alegada had resolved to propose to the Emperor to  
 make the caravan encamp in the desert, near KALCHAN-  
 NA, till the court should return to PEKIN; supposing  
 that so many of the court, and the greatest part of the  
 people of distinction, being in the country, there would  
 be nothing to do for the caravan at PEKIN; and, that  
 they believed, that he would not fail of requiring from  
 me, an order to the commissary for that purpose. It

\* All those who serve in the chamber  
 of the Emperor of CHINA are eunuchs, and  
 are either CHINESE OR MONGALLS; the CHI-  
 NESE nation being not less jealous of the sex

than other eastern people; but the MON-  
 GALLS; and generally all the TARTARS;  
 are not very liable to this malady.



AUGUST. was easy to see, that what determined the minister to  
1721. take this resolution, was nothing else but his apprehensions that the presents he expected to have from the commissary, if he should be at PEKIN at the time of his arrival, might, if he was absent, fall into other hands. But, as this was a design that might be attended with very bad consequences, and might have been the cause of the loss of men, as well as the horses belonging to the caravan, by being exposed to the extremity of cold and famine in the deserts, I became obliged to use all my efforts to render this intention of the minister abortive.

The 22d, being to go in the morning to court, the Emperor sent the master of ceremonies to require of me passports for some Mandarins, which were to pass the frontiers of RUSSIA; but, as I could well penetrate the grounds of their errand, I thought it my duty to refuse the passports demanded. Nevertheless, notwithstanding all my excuses, which I could muster up, to exempt me from giving them, the master of the ceremonies came to declare to me, in the clearest terms, the next day, which was

The 23d, "That the Emperor was, at one time, resolved to send those people away, whether I would  
give



“give them passports or not; but that I ought to con-  
 sider, that, in such case, I might expect an absolute  
 denial to every thing which I might have to propose.”

AUGUST.

1721.

Which convinced me, that it was absolutely necessary for me, on this occasion, to conform to his Majesty's pleasure, if I would retain the least hopes of succeeding in my desire of opposing the designs of the minister. For this reason,

On the 24th, when the master of the ceremonies came again to speak with me on this affair, I put into his hands a letter, addressed to the officers commanders on our frontiers, in the form he desired to have it; to which I joined the condition, that our caravan should not be hindered from coming to PEKIN directly; and that our commissary should, on his arrival at PEKIN, immediately be at liberty to begin his commerce, without being shut up, for a certain time, as had at some times been practised. The master of the ceremonies promised to speak to his Majesty about it; who had not only the goodness to give his consent immediately, but he, at the same time, gave strict orders to the president of the council, that he should take special care that no person whatsoever should go about in



AUGUST. any manner to interrupt the commissary in his business.  
1721.

The 25th, a PORTUGUESE Father JESUIT, called Father MAURANO, came to me, and told me, "That there was a person of quality, who, by him, made me an offer of 10,000 laen of silver, till the arrival of the caravan, which I might employ in what manner I thought proper; and that this lord was very much scandalized at the disobliging answer I had received from the council of the direction of the affairs of the MONGALLS, in regard to the 2000 laen of silver which I had required of them for the necessities of the caravan." Upon which, pressing him to let me know who this lord might be, he told me, "That he was indeed forbidden to let me know who this person was; but that he would nevertheless, in confidence, own to me that it was the 9th Prince, son of the Chan, who made me this offer \*." Thereupon I did not omit testifying, to him, how much I was touched with the generosity of a Prince to whom I had never the honour of paying my devoirs; adding, "I should never forget the good-

\* The late Emperor of CHINA had 17 princes born of his several wives and concubines. There were three present at the first audience of Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, who

were all very well proportioned, having fine complexions, and black eyes, well formed, without the least appearance of the deformities of the MONGALL nation.

" will



“ will which his highness was pleased to show me on <sup>AUGUST.</sup>  
 “ this occasion; and that I should, all the days of my <sup>1721.</sup>  
 “ life, retain the same sentiments as if I had received  
 “ his generous offers.” But the Father JESUIT having  
 remonstrated, “ That the Prince might possibly think  
 “ himself offended if I should refuse his offer altoge-  
 “ ther;” I was obliged to accept of 1000 laen of sil-  
 ver \*.

The 26th, I paid a visit to the Father JESUITS of  
 the FRENCH nation†; where I found the president of  
 the council, who let me know, by the mouth of these  
 Fathers, “ That he was come from receiving the Em-  
 “ peror’s orders, which were so favourable to our com-  
 “ merce, that there is no instance of the like liberty

\* There is an appearance as if this was  
 a snare laid for Mr. de LANGE, to render  
 him suspected by the Emperor of CHINA,  
 who, in the design which he had then form-  
 ed of leaving the succession to his third son,  
 could not fail of taking umbrage at the least  
 false step which the agent of RUSSIA might  
 happen to take on this occasion, which  
 might induce this monarch to consent to his  
 being sent away; which was probably the  
 whole aim of this intrigue.

† The JESUITS had great ascendancy  
 on the late Emperor of CHINA; and, as  
 the present Emperor hath been under their  
 hands, it ought not to be doubted but he is  
 likewise well affected to them, whatever  
 may be reported to the contrary. At the first

audience of Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, the Em-  
 peror, being seated on the throne, had, on  
 his left, as the place of honour, at three pa-  
 ces distance, a little advanced into the hall,  
 three of the Princes his sons; and, on his  
 right, a little more advanced, the JESUITS  
 belonging to the court; at five paces behind  
 them, a little more advanced, were placed  
 seven MONGALL Princes of the imperial  
 house; and then, on the two sides of the  
 hall, the ministers and grand Mandarins of  
 the court; all sitting cross-legged, accord-  
 ing to the manner of the TARTARS. By so  
 remarkable a distinction it may, in some de-  
 gree, be comprehended how much these  
 good fathers were in favour with the Em-  
 peror.



AUGUST. "having ever been granted before in CHINA." I answered

1721. him, through the help of these Fathers, "That I had

~ "no reason to doubt of the punctual execution of his  
"Majesty's orders, since he had the goodness to charge  
"the governor-general of PEKIN with them; of whose  
"indefatigable zeal for maintaining a good understand-  
"ing between the Bogdoi-Chan and the Czar, my ma-  
"ster, was sufficiently known to me." Whereupon he  
caused me to be told, "That he was not a man ca-  
"pable of receiving presents from foreigners, for do-  
"ing them a service, as many others did in such cases;  
"and that a step of that kind would entirely prevent  
"him from ever having the liberty of speaking to his  
"Majesty again in favour of any person whatsoever,  
"should it come to his Majesty's ear; but that never-  
"theless, he believed he might reserve to himself the  
"privilege, when he should come to our house to buy  
"any thing, of being treated more favourably than o-  
"thers in the price." Upon which I assured him, "That  
"we should always know to treat him with proper di-  
"stinction, in such a case."

The same day, I desired the master of the ceremonies to make my most humble acknowledgements to his Majesty, for the gracious reception which he had  
been



been pleased to honour me with, during my stay at JEGCHOLL; and to pray his permission for my returning to PEKIN; because I apprehended the caravan would soon arrive there. He came, some hours after, and informed me that his Majesty intended, the last day of this month, to go upon a party of hunting, in the desert, some leagues from JEGCHOLL; and that I might lay hold of that opportunity of taking leave of his Majesty, and of returning to PEKIN; he added, that his Majesty had likewise ordered the governor of PEKIN to go thither, and deliver to me the tapestries he had caused to be made for the Czar.

During the rest of my stay at JEGCHOLL, my table was furnished daily, the same as the first day of my arrival, from his Majesty's kitchen. And they showed me all the buildings and gardens of this charming place, which is certainly worthy to be the delight of so grand a monarch; and is infinitely superior, in beauty and magnificence, to the palace at PEKIN or CZCHANZCHUMNIENNE.

The 31<sup>st</sup>, I had the honour of attending his Majesty when he parted from JEGCHOLL; and, on this occasion, he had the goodness to ask me, "If I enjoyed my health." After having answered with all the respect due



AUGUST. due to so gracious an inquiry, he said to me further,  
1721. "That he thought he observed some alteration in my

countenance, and that I ought to take care of my  
"health." After which he gave me permission to re-  
turn to PEKIN, after having, by the master of the cere-  
monies, let me know, that, if the caravan had not been  
so nigh, I should have had the honour of accompanying  
him to the party of hunting\*.

### S E P T E M B E R.

The 3d, I was returned from my JEGCHOLL jour-  
ney, being three days on the road.

The 7th, I sent my interpreter to KALCHANNA, to  
the commissary, with 1500 laen of silver.

The 10th, I acquainted my Mandarin, that, as the  
caravan was at hand, it was most necessary that the  
house should be repaired, that I might not continue  
under apprehensions of the merchandise being dama-  
ged, for want of sufficient cover, during the rainy au-  
tumnal season. But he continually refused me the li-

\* Hunting is the favourite employment  
of the TARTAR Pagans. And one may ga-  
ther the inclination of the TARTARS from  
the pleasure and assiduity with which the  
late Emperor of CHINA followed the chase ;  
nevertheless he mixed much of the politician  
with his favourite passion ; for going eve-  
ry year a-hunting, escorted by a body of

the army, consisting of 50 or 60,000 men  
completely armed, and generally travelling  
100 leagues in this manner, this monarch  
thereby inured his courtiers and his troops  
to the use of arms, and to fatigues ; and  
prevented their falling into the soft and in-  
dolent manner of living peculiar to the CHI-  
NESE.



berty of getting it repaired of myself, under the promise that he would take care to get it repaired before the arrival of the caravan. But, seeing one day pass after another, and nothing done, I went, on the 15th, to the president, to pray him to give orders for repairing the house; at the least, not oppose my doing it at my own expence. But his answer was, he would instantly hire the workmen, and it should be repaired in one day. And these promises were daily repeated, as well by my Mandarin as by the president, till, at length, the commissary arrived with the caravan at PEKIN, on the 29th. As it rained very hard during that whole day, the commissary found, at his arrival, that there was no place where he, or any of his people, could be covered from the rain; and he was obliged to let all the baggage of the caravan remain in the court-yard, without being able to secure one single parcel. As soon as the caravan was entered into my court-yard they re-inforced the guard at the gate, and posted centinels all round the house, to secure us, as they said, against thieves; but, in reality, to prevent our commissary's having any opportunities of trading with any person whatsoever, till such time as they should receive the merchandises, which they might pretend to have occasion

SEPT.  
1721.



SEPT. sion for, for his Majesty and the court. Besides which,

1721. they ordered two Mandarins, with a clerk, to remain

in our house, to take good care that no merchandise was sold on credit, and to note down exactly the names of all that should come into, or go out of, our house; what goods, and how much, they bought, and at what price.

### OCTOBER.

In the beginning of this month I sent again to the council, on the subject of the repair of our house. Upon which they let me know, the 6th, by a clerk, that the president had sent a courier to his Majesty, to be informed if his Majesty would be pleased to have our house repaired by the treasury, or if it was our business to repair it; the Emperor, by virtue of the last convention between the two empires, not being obliged to furnish any thing to our people. Whereupon I patiently waited till the

12th. The workmen came, at length, to make the reparation so often promised; but it was done so negligently, that, when they made an end, there was little alteration for the better. The commissary employed the rest of this month to unpack the goods, that he might put every thing in order against the time he should



should be permitted to begin to trade. In the mean while, we were visited very assiduouſly by four Mandarins, who pretended to be deputed, from the court, to receive the merchandises appropriated for his Majesty; demanding, from the commissary, an exact specification of all the goods brought by the caravan, that they might chuse what was necessary for the service of the court. They were answered, " That they need not expect that the commissary would give them a specification of all he had in the caravan; but that, if they had any orders of the court for us, they ought to produce letters of credit addressed to me or the commissary; or, at least, to let us see a specification of the goods wanted, signed by the master of the wardrobe of the Emperor, whereupon they should know if such goods were in the caravan or not. But these gentlemen would not quit their demand so, alledging, " That they must go according to the customs observed in times past, when the commissary of every caravan had been obliged to give such a specification to those deputed by the court to receive the goods from him; that they did not intend to be served at this time as they had been with former commissaries, when the court got goods of but indifferent quality,

OCTOB.

1721.



OCTOB. "after the best goods had been disposed to private per-  
1721. "sons; that to this end, they should be careful to exa-

mine all that the commissary had brought, and that  
"they would take what they wanted, for the court,  
"out of the best they could find, particularly fables  
"at 3 laen per pair, as usual." The commissary, see-  
ing these people pretend to insist on his giving them  
goods at such an under-price, craved from me the pro-  
tection of the Czar, our common master, alledging,  
that he had fables which cost him 20 or 30 roubles  
the pair; and that it was easy to comprehend what  
market he should make with the rest of his goods, if  
he should be obliged to sell the fables at such a losing  
price. Upon which I made the deputies understand,  
"That the merchandises of the caravan did not be-  
"long to the commissary, nor to me; and, in case they  
"did, it was not to be supposed that we should credit  
"them at all, at least without their bringing a specifi-  
"cation in form, signed by the person who hath the  
"superintendance of these affairs at court. But that  
"did not signify, they had only to bring their money,  
"and, when the commissary had shown them the goods,  
"he would see if he could agree with them." These  
gentlemen seemed to take offence at this answer. Ne-  
vertheless,



vertheless, they engaged, at last, to bring such a specification; but they deferred it from one day to another. In the mean time, they made use of all their cunning to prevail on us to deliver them, at an under-price, all the goods they thought fit to take.

OCTOB.  
1721.

## N O V E M B E R.

The 1st of this month, having sent my interpreter to the council, to desire them to admit the commissary to the liberty of trading, they let me know, in answer,

“ That it was impossible to do it, before the deputies of the court had received the goods they had to receive for his Majesty.”

The 4th, I spoke of this affair, not only with my Mandarin, but also with the Kientu, or Mandarins appointed to our house, to the end that they should dispose those people to give us their specification, in order to end this affair. The same day I went to meet his Majesty, who was returning from the hunting; and met him on the 5th, at 80 ly from PEKIN, at the hot-baths of TANGZCHANG. His Majesty told me, “ That he had received news from EUROPE, that his Czarish Majesty had made peace with SWEDEN, by the mediation of the ROMAN Emperor.” After which, he asked me, “ How long the caravan had been arrived?”



NOVEM. Upon which I answered, "That they were, indeed,  
1721. "since the 29th of September at PEKIN; but the com-  
"miffary had not yet got permission to trade." Upon  
which his Majesty, dismissing me, went to the bath.

I must, on this occasion, acquaint the reader with the custom of this empire, in such circumstances as this of the deputies above-mentioned. All the Mandarins that are charged with any commission of the court, be it to subjects or foreigners, are named and dispatched by the ministry. When such commission is finished, these people are obliged to make presents, not only to the ministers, but also to the Princes of the blood, to the end that they may not give them too much trouble, and that they may keep something to themselves. They have no cause to fear that the people, with whom they have to do on these missions, will find access to the ministers, or that ever a serious inquiry will be made into their conduct; which is so true, that no person will readily undertake to make complaints of their tricks, because there is no reparation to be expected. No person can carry his complaints directly to the Emperor, but they must absolutely be made by the ministers, or those who hold the first office of the palace, or the chamber of his Majesty; and these



these gentlemen are so closely linked to the interests of the other great lords of the empire, that, whatever party the sufferer may address himself to, he will certainly remain the dupe of the affair. NOVEM. 1721.

The same day, the deputies endeavoured again to get some goods from us, while the specification might be made out; but their design did not take effect.

The 9th, I spoke again to the Mandarins of the council, concerning our caravan; but I could get no other answer, but that this affair regarded the deputies of the court only.

The 14th, when I would have gone out myself to the council, the guard, at our gate, stopped me, under pretext that the four Mandarins, deputies from the court, had ordered, that no person should be suffered to go out till the goods, which they ought to have for the court, were first delivered. Though I passed in spite of the guard, I was nevertheless obliged to return without doing any thing, as the president was not in the city.

The 15th, I sent my interpreter to the council to receive the resolution of the president, upon what I had represented the day before; and as he found him not there, but was told he was at home, he went thither



NOVEM. ther to speak with him, and brought me the answer

17<sup>21</sup>. following, “ That the president would take care that  
“ this affair should be ended out of hand; that to this  
“ end it was nevertheless necessary, that the commissa-  
“ ry should put a reasonable price upon his goods.”  
He desired further my interpreter to tell me, that, at  
this season, he was rarely at home; because he was o-  
bliged to be all day long at CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE at-  
tending his Majesty; that when I should have any affair  
to propose to him, I should communicate the same, by  
my interpreter, to the Mandarins of the council, who  
would not fail making him the necessary report im-  
mediately.

The 16th, the deputy Mandarins having made up,  
according to their own fancy, a specification of mer-  
chandises to be received by them for the provision of  
his Majesty and the court, they came to present it to  
us, in order, by means of this imposition, to get a large  
parcel of goods from us.

But the 17th, this specification being translated into  
the RUSS language, we found that the quantity of mer-  
chandise which they demanded, was much too large to  
be agreed to. For which reason, it was asked of them,  
“ From whom this specification was sent to us? and  
“ who



“who had made it out?” Upon which, after many turns, NOVEM.  
and tergiversations employed to no purpose, they were 1721.  
at length forced to acknowledge that it was of their  
own forming; it being their opinion, that such a quantity  
would be wanting for the use of the court. But,  
in making this avowal, they did not fail to make the  
commiffary apprehend, “That he need not flatter him-  
“self with a liberty of trading, with any person, before  
“they should receive all that was contained in the spe-  
“cification.”

The 18th, the Alegada being come to our house to  
buy some goods, I besought him to remember the pro-  
mises which his Majesty had been so good to make to  
Mr. de ISMAYLOFF on the subject of freedom of com-  
merce, seeing, that by the course which affairs took at  
present, it looked as if they were entirely forgot. But  
he gave me for an answer to all, “That it was an af-  
“fair that did not in the least regard him, and that I  
“had none but the council to address myself to\*.”

\* In CHINA all is done by the disposi-  
tion of different colleges, to whose cognizance  
the affairs may belong; it not being permit-  
ted to address the court directly, upon any  
affair whatever. In the time of the last CHI-  
NESE Emperor, these colleges were so abso-  
lute, that, on many occasions, the Emperor  
himself dared not meddle with their decrees;  
but, since the TARTAR Princes have been in

possession of the throne of CHINA, they are  
not much regarded; witness the exercise of  
all sorts of foreign religions publickly autho-  
rised, and the allowance of a RUSSIAN agent  
at PEKIN, agreed to by the sole good pleasure  
of the Emperor, in opposition to the remon-  
strances of his ministers, and to the constitu-  
tion of the government of CHINA.

The



NOVEM. The 22d, I sent my interpreter to the council with  
1721. a memorial on the subject of this affair; but the Mandarins he found there refused to receive it, under the pretext, that they must have before-hand the orders of the president thereupon, and know, from him, whether they should receive it or not.

The same day the four deputies, being come to see us, gave us to understand, " That the usual time of  
" keeping the commissary at home being nigh finish-  
" ed, they were come to commence a trade with him,  
" and to know how much he demanded for each sort  
" of merchandise, to the end, that, after they had fi-  
" nished their bargain with him, they might then de-  
" clare our house free for every body to enter." Where-  
upon I demanded of them, " Who could have au-  
" thorised them to shut up, in the manner usual with  
" slaves, for any time, the subjects of so potent a mo-  
" narch as was the Czar my master?" But these gentle-  
men, not finding it proper to answer so ticklish a ques-  
tion, contented themselves with saying, " That it  
" would be well for the commissary to resolve to give  
" them the merchandise they required, and that at a  
" reasonable price, unless he would, out of wantonness,  
" involve himself in expences which would much ex-  
ceed



“ceed the profit he thought to make by his obstinacy; NOVEM.  
“and that, in the situation he was, being obliged to 1721.  
“feed his people at his own expence, he acted directly  
“contrary to his own interests, not to close affairs with  
“them.” Thereupon I desired to know, “If they had  
“orders to press us, in so violent a manner, to deliver  
“them the merchandises.” Upon which they answered,  
“No; and that they were come to deal with the  
“commiffary; but that he must let them have the best  
“goods at such prices as the court always paid.” The  
commiffary, to make his last effort, offered them mer-  
chandises, of the same quality as those which the court  
had received at other times, without advancing the  
price; but that did not close the affair. They went  
away, saying they would consult together, to see if it  
was feasible for them to augment the price of the  
goods above that which the court had always given.

Soon after they came from the council to enquire for  
my interpreter, to communicate to him the answer of the  
president concerning my memorial. Upon which I sent  
him directly with the said memorial; no way doubting,  
but, after what the president had himself told him, it  
would be received at once. But, on his return, he ac-  
quainted me, that the president had ordered a Manda-

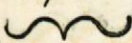


NOVEM. 1721. rin to let me know the answer; which I wrote, word for word, from the mouth of my interpreter. "I applied to the Allegamba on the subject of the memorial of the agent, and he not only forbid us to receive the said memorial, but also charged me to tell the agent that which he had formerly told Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, viz. That commerce is looked upon by us with contempt, and as a very trifling object; that the agent himself was not ignorant, that we had long refused to admit the present caravan, and most certainly should never have consented to its admittance into CHINA, if his Majesty had not suffered himself to be persuaded to it, at the reiterated instances of Mr. de ISMAYLOFF." That the Allegamba had, at the same time, added these words, "These merchants come here to enrich themselves, not our people, which is easy to be seen, because they pretend themselves to fix the price of their own goods, that they may sell them the dearer. For these reasons, go tell the agent, that we shall not only refuse to receive the said memorial, but that, in future, he need not give himself the trouble of proposing any thing to us that may be relative to commerce, because we will not embarrass ourselves hereafter with the merchants of RUSSIA." Whereupon



NOVEM.

1721.



upon our confinement continued much the same as before; infomuch, that it was only permitted to the domesticks of the first minister, of the president, and a clerk of the wardrobe, to enter our house; which they did very frequently, and in all appearance, to spy what passed in our quarters; in hopes that we should be obliged, at length, to submit our trade to their discretion.

The 25th, I understood that the brigadier, who, till that time, had the charge of the guard at our house, was restored to the good graces of the Emperor; and that his Majesty had made him grand marshal of the court, with the command in chief of the army which this monarch keeps in the country of the MONGALLS\*. Whereupon I repaired immediately to his house, to pay my compliments; and having found an opportunity, at the same time, of acquainting him with what had pas-

\* The MONGALLS are TARTAR Pagans, who dwell to the north of CHINA. They are divided into two branches, of which the first is that of the Eastern, or of the Northern MONGALLS, or the NIEUCHU, who inhabit towards the coasts of the sea of JAPAN, between the river AMOOR and the Grand Wall; these are the natural subjects of the TARTAR-house which at present fills the throne of CHINA; and are the very people, who, in the last century, made themselves masters of the empire of CHINA;

they are brought up in extreme gross idolatry, and have in a manner no religion; they, for the greatest part, dwell in towns and villages, and apply themselves to agriculture. The second branch is that of the Western MONGALLS, otherwise called CALCHIES; these last are only under the protection of CHINA, without being entirely subjects, having their own proper Chan; they live in tents, and subsist by their cattle, without cultivating their lands. Their religion is the worship of the Delay-Lama.



NOVEM. fed regarding the four Mandarins deputed from the  
1721. court; he gave me his word that he would go to court  
that day, to inform himself circumstantially of that  
affair; and that, afterwards, he would order them to  
receive what might be absolutely necessary for his Ma-  
jesty and the court without further delay. He, at the  
same time, seemed to be extremely surpris'd at the con-  
duct of his brother the Allegamba on this occasion.

The 27th, the first minister, being come to our  
house, told me, " That he understood the interdict on  
" our house was not taken off, and desired me to ac-  
" quaint him with the cause of it." Upon which I  
made answer, " That I had, for a long time, endea-  
" voured to find it out; but I could find no person who  
" would seem to know it. Nevertheless it must, in  
" time, be cleared up; seeing it was a notorious inju-  
" stice, to keep a caravan shut up so long, that came  
" upon the faith of treaties solemnly ratified." He re-  
plied thereupon, " That the court, for a long time,  
" resolved to admit no caravans, because all the mer-  
" chants, who had traded with the RUSSES, were reduced  
" to the lowest ebb, by the very great quantity of RUSS  
" goods which were at present in CHINA; that it was on  
" the very strong instances which Mr. de ISMAYLOFF  
" had



NOVEM.

1721.



“ had made, as well to the court as to the council; of-  
“ fering, for this purpose, that the commissary and his  
“ people should subsist, for the future, at their own  
“ expence; that, in the end, they had admitted the  
“ present caravan; that the commissary, so far from  
“ having any regard to these circumstances, refused  
“ now to take the usual prices, that had been offered  
“ him, for the merchandise which the court had occa-  
“ sion for, and insisted on a very high price for them;  
“ That he wished I would bring the commissary to rea-  
“ son in this affair, and let him know the result.” Upon  
which I told him, “ That I had nothing to do with  
“ putting a new price on goods which the commissary  
“ had in commission; that it did not depend on me,  
“ as it was the commissary who was to account for the  
“ goods with which he was entrusted, who would not  
“ permit any other, besides himself who sold them, to  
“ set a price; that, as to what regarded the admission  
“ of the caravan, it was stipulated long before Mr. de  
“ ISMAYLOFF’s arrival at PEKIN, and there could not  
“ the least alteration be made in it, without shaking  
“ the foundations of the treaties concluded between  
“ the two empires; and supposing any alteration was  
“ to be made, it could not be done but by mutual

con-



NOVEM. " consent, and after deputies, appointed for this pur-

1721. " pose, by the two empires, should have examined this  
 " affair to the bottom, and made a new plan of con-  
 " vention." This answer seemed to nettle the minister,  
 who broke up the conversation, and ordered the com-  
 missary to show him some goods.

### D E C E M B E R.

The four Mandarins, deputed from the court, find-  
 ing, at length, that we rather chose to have our con-  
 finement continue, than to submit to their unreason-  
 able pretensions; and that, on the other hand, the  
 grand marshal of the court interested himself strongly  
 in our favour, and would absolutely have an end of  
 this affair, the interdict on our house was at last taken  
 off. And,

The 2d of this month, the council made publicati-  
 on, that it was permitted to all persons to come and  
 trade with us; but they used one piece of chicanery,  
 which hurt us much, and really kept off all the mer-  
 chants; for when they perceived the merchants began  
 to resort to our house, they made known to them,  
 " That no person should carry out the least thing, of  
 " what they bought at our house, without showing it  
 " first to the four Mandarins-deputies, to the end that  
 " they



DECEMB.

1721.

“they might take what they found proper for the use  
“of the court.” This notification took away from the  
merchants all desire of trading with us; seeing they  
were assured of being great sufferers if they were obli-  
ged to pass through the hands of these greedy Manda-  
rins; which made me acquainted, more than any thing  
else, with the misery of the profession of a merchant  
in CHINA; who are obliged to depend on the discretion  
of Mandarins and soldiers, who have none. But the  
Poyamba or grand marshal of the court, having been  
informed of it, had the goodness to remedy this new  
grievance; ordering the Mandarins not to take any  
thing, for the use of the court, from any other person  
than from the commissary. For this purpose he sent, at  
the same time, his steward with them, to the commis-  
sary, to tell him, “That he came with them, by order  
“of his master, to see how much, and what sorts of  
“merchandises these gentlemen would take, to the end  
“that they might make him an exact report.” Where-  
upon they were shown the goods; but they acted so  
much upon the reserve, in presence of this man, that  
they took in all but a very middling parcel of goods.  
Nevertheless, this did not prevent their repairing every  
day to our house, to take from the CHINESE merchants  
what



DECEMBER. what goods they thought proper. And the more to  
1721. counteract our trade, the ministry had represented to  
the Emperor, that there had been brought, during many years, from year to year, into his Majesty's magazines of fur, a much greater quantity of fables than were necessary for the consumption of the court; and that, as this quantity augmented annually, it was better that his Majesty should order some of them to be sold, than to let them lye and spoil.

The 12th, 13th, and 14th, many CHINESE merchants, and other persons from the great houses, and ordinary people of PEKIN, having come to our house, ventured to buy some squirrel-skins, and other goods of small value, in order to discover the true designs of the Mandarins who kept themselves at our house; they did not oppose them until they had fixed their bargains; but, when the bargains were concluded, they signified to them, that they were not to carry out any of the things they had bought, till they should chuse the best of what they had for the court.

The 15th, as they were apprised at the court and council, that we had begun to trade, they published that they would sell, at reasonable prices, 20,000 fables out of the fur-magazines of the Emperor; where-  
upon



upon all those who had begun to trade with us went to DECEMB. 1721.  
 supply themselves there; some for fear of the chicanery  
 of the Mandarins, others in hopes of buying cheaper  
 there than with us. In short, they sold, by what I could  
 afterwards learn, the best fables at  $2\frac{1}{2}$  laen, middling  
 at  $1\frac{1}{2}$  laen to 1, and the least at 90 fun; but these were  
 not SIBERIA fables, but those of the TONGUSES\*, under  
 the dominions of CHINA, taken about the border of  
 the river AMOOR†; of which they furnish annually a  
 quantity to the magazines of his Majesty. The coun-  
 try whence these fables are brought is called SOLLONI.

The 16th, I was informed, that, notwithstanding  
 the court had consented to a free commerce, between  
 the two nations, free of all duties, the Mandarins be-  
 longing to our house, had given the strictest orders to  
 our guard, not to let any the least thing, of any kind,  
 be brought into our house without producing a billet

\* The TONGUSES are a Pagan people  
 of the north of ASIA, who are very pro-  
 bably the descendents of TARTARS; they  
 occupy a great proportion of the eastern  
 parts of SIBERIA; and some branches of  
 this people extend themselves even to the  
 southern banks of the river AMOOR; the  
 last party of the TONGUSES is subject to  
 CHINA; all the other TONGUSES are sub-  
 jects of RUSSIA. *Vide Histoire Genealog.*  
*des TARTARES.*

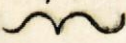
† The river AMOOR is one of the largest  
 rivers in ASIA; it takes its rise in the  
 country of the MONGALLS, near the river  
 SELINGA, and running from thence east-  
 ward, it makes the frontier of these parts,  
 between Eastern SIBERIA and the Oriental  
 MONGALLS; and, after a course of more  
 than 300 GERMAN leagues, it discharges  
 itself into the sea of JAPAN, in lat. 44 de-  
 grees north.



DECEMB. from them; and such a billet cost them 30 zschoffes,  
1721. which make about 4 fun. But those who would have  
free ingrefs and egress, to our house to trade, were obliged, once for all, to make a fixed agreement with them, either for a certain limited time, or for the whole time we might stay at PEKIN; upon which they received a billet, which intituled them to come into, and go out of our house as often as they pleased. All those who refused to pay in this manner, for the freedom of entry into our house, were sent back, as people who came to our house to borrow, or perhaps to steal on occasion.

The 17th, my Mandarin being come to see me, I told him, " That I was very glad to learn, that the  
" court had also begun to enter into trade; which they  
" had before looked upon as so contemptible a thing  
" with them, that they always reproached us with the  
" little importance of it; that, since his Majesty had  
" given such authentick marks of the esteem he had  
" for commerce, I hoped, that in time to come, they  
" would speak of it with more circumspection." Whereupon he replied, " That it was not with a view of interest that the Emperor had ordered the fables to be  
" sold, that I spoke of; but that the sale was made  
" purely,



“purely, because, having so great a quantity of them DECEMB.  
 “in his magazines, he thought it better to order them 1721.  
 “to be sold, than that they should lie there till rotten.”   
 I thereupon told him, “That if, at the court of his  
 “Czarish Majesty, and in his empire, they could make  
 “use of all the furs which the country furnished, they  
 “would probably see very few of them in CHINA.” Af-  
 ter which, I demanded of him, “If it was with the  
 “knowledge of the Emperor that the Mandarins, pla-  
 “ced at our gate, sold, to the people who had business  
 “with us, permits of passage, in and out; and absolute-  
 “ly denied entrance, to our house, to those who would  
 “not pay for those permits?” I would likewise be in-  
 formed by him, “What was the meaning that the 4  
 “Mandarins, deputies of the court, were continually  
 “in our house?” His answer to which was, “That the  
 “Emperor knew nothing of it, nor did any person dare  
 “to tell him of it; the Alegada having given them  
 “leave to sell such permits, as a small casual profit:  
 “that, as to the Mandarin deputies, they were igno-  
 “rant of the consequence of what they did.” Where-  
 upon I told him, at the conclusion, “That I did not  
 “comprehend why the ministers were so averse to us  
 “in every thing, even to the refusing to see us, or re-



DECEMB. "ceive our memorials; that I wished, with all my heart,

1721. "that they should not carry it so far, as to oblige me

~~~~~ "to carry my complaints to the person of the Bogdoi-  
 "Chan direct; and further, that I asked nothing but
 "what was conform to treaties, and that if the treaties
 "were to subsist in their full force, between the two
 "empires, there was an absolute necessity to hear what
 "I had to say, and to give such resolutions as they
 "should think proper, upon the memorials which I
 "should, from time to time, present them on the oc-
 "casion."

The latter end of this month, his Majesty made a
 tour to CAISA, which is a palace, with a fine park, some
 lys to the south of PEKIN, where he passed some weeks;
 which was the occasion that nothing remarkable pas-
 sed, during this time, between the ministers and me.

JANUARY, 1722.

The 15th of this month the guard, at our gate, re-
 fused entrance to some carts of hay, which my people
 had bought, because the peasants had not billets of
 passage, and they would not give any thing to the sol-
 diers; and notwithstanding I sent to advertise the Man-
 darins, and officers who commanded the guard at our
 gate,

gate, of this insolence of the guard, they, notwithstanding, drove away the peasants with their hay. I complained of it to my Mandarin, but to little purpose. JANUAR. 1722.

The 16th, after having received the news of the perpetual peace, concluded between his Czarish Majesty and the OTTOMAN PORTE, I caused Te Deum to be sung in the church of ST. NICOLAS, and celebrated the rest of the day in festivity.

FEBRUARY.

The 2d of this month, and according to custom, I offered some presents to his Majesty on the new year, which is a ceremony that must be observed by every person, vested with any publick character, unless he would expose himself to a general censure. His Majesty received my little presents very graciously, and presented me, in return, with some of all the sorts of game he had taken at the hunting the last autumn*, and of a good number of sheep; and it is in this manner that his Majesty is accustomed to regale annually, at the close of the year, those people of his court that he would distinguish.

The 4th, which is the last day of the CHINESE year,

* The MONGALLS, and other Pagan TARTARS, have a particular method for drying all sorts of flesh, by the air and the sun, which entirely prevents their perishing; by which means they keep wild fowl from one year to another.

FEBR. the court ended the year with a feast; which was very
1722. short, because his Majesty was but just recovered from

 a fit of illness, which he had laboured under. On this occasion, I had the honour of sitting over-against his Majesty, at some distance from the throne; and this place is a little below the seat of the Princes of the blood, but above that of the Mandarins of the first class. The feast being finished, and his Majesty retired, the master of ceremonies came to tell me, that I might be dispensed with coming the next day, being new year's-day, to court, to pay my compliments to his Majesty; seeing it was the custom of the Princes of the blood, and Mandarins of the empire, to be all ranged in the court of the castle that day, every one according to his rank; where, as I was a foreigner, I could have no rank.

The 14th, the first minister gave me, and the commissary a dinner; on which occasion there passed nothing remarkable, unless that he asked me, "If I was
" not to return with the caravan?" Which made me think they had already settled this affair at court, I answered him thereupon, "That it did not depend on
" my pleasure to leave the court, where the Czar, my
master,

“master, had sent me to reside, till he should recall
“me.” FEBR. 1722.

The 18th and 19th, his Majesty caused the celebration of the feast of Lanthorns, which had been annually celebrated, at the court of CHINA, for above 2000 years. This feast was solemnized at CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE with great magnificence. During the grand entertainment, which was that day at court, they represented all sorts of plays, and other diverting shows; and, at night, they exhibited grand fire-works, which, joined to so many illuminations, and to the prodigious quantity of lanthorns, adorned with figures, and diversified with all sorts of colours, caused a surprising agreeable view, during the darkness of the night*. They placed me, on this occasion, the same as they did the last time at PEKIN, at the distance of some paces from the Emperor's throne.

The 20th, being returned to PEKIN, some of the principal of the KOREA merchants came to see me; but when they would have entered my apartment, some of

* The CHINESE are accustomed to be at very great expence at this festival, in fire-works, and in lanthorns, having lanthorns that will cost them 10,000 lien, and upwards. The fire of their rockets are also remarkably beautiful, the variety and liveliness of their colours surpass the EUROPEAN performances so much, that we are obliged to own, they excel us in these performances.

FEBR. the foldiers, who accompanied them, opposed it; and

1722. they narrowly escaped the lash of the foldiers whips,
 who had lifted them against those merchants. Upon
 which, I presently ordered them to be kept, by our
 people, in the court before my house, to wait there
 till the merchants should go out of my house. And
 I, at the same time, gave them to understand, that
 they for the future would do wisely not to make use of
 their whips at my house. After which the merchants
 indeed entered into my apartment, but dared not make
 any stay there; for fear of being insulted by the foldi-
 ers that escorted them*. The civility with which I
 received them, and to which they had not been used
 with the CHINESE, made them have a desire of being
 more acquainted with me. For they came again on
 the 22d, before my house, but the guard at the gate
 refused them entrance.

* The CHINESE being accustomed to treat the inhabitants of KOREA with great roughness, and having prohibited them all correspondence with foreign nations, it is not to be expected that they should relax their hard treatment of them, for the sake of a minister of the court of RUSSIA; which is as it were the only power who could support the inhabitants of KOREA, if they should

ever be desirous of throwing off the CHINESE yoke; seeing, that, by the river AMOOR, the RUSSES could fall down into the ports of KOREA, without a possibility of the CHINESE hindering them. And it is not impossible but this conduct of Mr. LANGE might have been one cause of the court of CHINA's sudden resolution of ordering him to leave the country.

MARCH.

M A R C H.

MARCH.

1722.

During this month, we continued our trade as much as the Mandarins, and foldiers of our guard, would permit. There passed nothing else remarkable, unless that the commissary having sent a clerk of the caravan towards the deserts, to see in what condition the horses were, which were left there in their way to PEKIN; he reported to us, that they were all in very bad plight; and that if we did not, out of hand, send money, that they might be put into stables, there was danger of the greatest part of them dying.

A P R I L.

The 6th of this month, I sent my interpreter, at the desire of the commissary, to the Mandarins which were placed at our house on account of the caravan, and let them know, that the commissary being obliged to send one of his people with money, towards the desert, in order that the people, who had the charge of the horses of the caravan, should be enabled to put them into stables, he would, for the greater security, have occasion for some foldiers, or some others, to escort this man; and I prayed their care of this affair. Whereupon they returned me answer, that they would

APRIL. make their report to the council; for, without their
1722. orders, they could do nothing in it.

The 7th, two Mandarins, accompanied by a clerk, came to bring me an answer, from the president, on this affair; and, it being wrote on a sheet of paper, they read the same to me in the following terms.

“ The Allegamba having been informed yesterday,
“ that you wanted to send a message again towards the
“ deserts, could not but imagine that it was for some
“ other business than that of horses, that your people
“ made such frequent journies between the deserts and
“ PEKIN; this gives him reason to think, that, by the
“ help of the MONGALLS, you carry on a secret intelli-
“ gence between this city and SELINGINSKY, which
“ may give birth to complaints and threats between
“ the two empires; for he is not ignorant, that the
“ MONGALLS are a people capable of engaging in such
“ affairs, and that the RUSSES do not grudge money on
“ such occasions.” I asked them thereupon, “ Whe-
“ ther this answer was from the Allegamba, or whether
“ it was their own composition.” Upon which they as-
sured me, that they wrote it, word for word, the same
that the Allegamba gave them; and that it was for the

the same reason he would not consent to the sending the person, as desired.

APRIL.

1722.

After this explanation, I thought necessary, for my greater security, to desire them to acquaint the All-gamba, on my behalf, "That the precaution he took " was not right to take, unless with prisoners, or unless " he had any intercepted letter to produce, by which " he could convict me of having sought to embroil the " two empires; that bearing, as I did, a publick character, I might write, as often as I pleased, without " having any occasion either of the escort, or the consent of the president; and the same, if I had a courier to dispatch for my private affairs, as he could not " prevent it without an open violence." I sent forthwith my interpreter to the council, with the Mandarins, to know the determination of this minister. But he sent me word, that he had no desire to employ the horses and the people of the army of the Emperor, his master, in our service, on journies which must cause them to be at expences for which they were not furnished by their ordinary pay. Upon which I made him the proposal of being ourselves at the expence of the people for the escort which he should grant us, and that we would also mount them on our own horses, that

APRIL. they might have no occasion for the Emperor's; or, if
 1722. that was still not satisfactory, I would only demand a
 passport, and would run the risk of sending one of our
 own people without an escort. But he continued firm in
 his denial, and would not allow of one or other of
 the expedients; contenting himself with letting me
 know, once for all, "That he would do nothing in it."
 I learnt, at the same time, from my interpreter, that
 they had reasoned among themselves, on this occasion,
 in much the following manner; "These foreigners
 "come here with their commerce, to encumber us e-
 "very moment with a thousand petty affairs, pretend-
 "ing that they ought to be favoured, on all occasions,
 "no more nor less than if they laid an obligation on us;
 "and yet, we are still to receive the first answer from
 "them on the subject of our affairs."

The 16th, I understood, that, some weeks ago,
 the Tush-du Chan of the MONGALLS* who encamp

* This is the name of the present Chan of the Western MONGALLS. This Chan was heretofore sovereign; but, since the Eastern MONGALLS have possessed themselves of CHINA, he put himself under the protection of that empire; in order to be the better able to make head against the KALMUCKS, with whom they are, in a manner, at continual war. He is a very powerful prince; his dominions, on the western side, reach to the banks of the great river YE-

NISEY, and even from thence, on the other side of this river, towards the sources of the OBY; and, on the other side, towards the east, they reach to the Great wall. The Chan of the Western MONGALLS hath a great many petty Chans of this nation for his vassals, and can bring 100,000 men, or more, into the field, all cavalry; but his soldiers fall far short of the KALMUCKS soldiery.

at URG A, had brought complaints to the court, of the ill conduct of the RUSS merchants who came to URG A; and that he had, at the same time, advertised the ministry, that there never had been so great a concourse of RUSS and CHINESE merchants at his residence, as in this year; that, thereupon, his Majesty had taken a resolution to send a Mandarin with orders to the Chan to chase out all the merchants, as well RUSSES as CHINESE, from URG A, without letting it appear that it was done by order of his Majesty; but that it should appear as the proper act of the Tush-du Chan, as master of his own country.

The same day, a courier, who was lately arrived from SELINGINSKY, with dispatches from the Mandarin who resided there, told my interpreter, that the intendant of SELINGINSKY had tendered several packets of letters, that came from RUSSIA, to this Mandarin, in order to be forwarded to the council of the affairs of the MONGALLS at PEKIN; but he refused to receive them, because the intendant could not acquaint him with their contents.

M A Y.

The 4th of this month, two Mandarins of the council, accompanied with three clerks and two officers of
our

MAY. our guard, being come to my apartment at 11 o'clock
1722. at night, informed me, that the Allegamba, being re-
turned from court, wanted to speak with me on an af-
fair of consequence; and because he was employed,
during the day-time, from morning till night, he prayed
me to give myself the trouble of coming to him,
though it was late at night. I was a-bed when the
message came to me; however I made no difficulty of
rising, to comply with this minister's desire; the more,
as the Mandarins assured me that the business he want-
ed to speak with me about was a very pressing affair.
When I came to his house I was received with remark-
able civility, and the Allegamba being come in person
to meet me, even to the court, he led me to his a-
partment, and desired me to sit down by him. He then
began to make excuses, that, in so long a time, he had
not been able to see me at his own house, or in other
places; but that he supposed I was not ignorant that
he was obliged to be every day, from morning till
night, with his Majesty, at CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE.
Upon which I replied, that his excuse was unanswer-
able; and that I commiserated his being obliged to
pass his time in so fatiguing a manner. After many
other reciprocal compliments of this nature, he de-
manded

manded of me, " If it was long since I had any news MAY.
 " from SELINGINSKY." I answered, " That it was 1722.
 " some time since I had any." In the end, the affair
 which he was about discovered itself, by little and little,
 when he asked me, " If I remembered that when I
 " would lately dispatch a messenger, by KALCHANNA,
 " towards the desert, he had told me that he could not
 " consent to it, because he apprehended, that, by such
 " means, secret correspondence might be carried on,
 " which might bring on some misunderstanding be-
 " tween the two empires." I told him thereupon,
 " That I did remember that, and the rest of the unex-
 " pected answer he then gave me; but, not having e-
 " ver been able to guess whence such suspicion could
 " arise, he would infinitely oblige me, if he would please
 " to speak a little more intelligibly on this affair."
 Whereupon he replied, " We apprehend you have in-
 " telligence of our deserters, which you do not think
 " fit to communicate to us*." Thereupon I remon-

* The TONGUSES, as well as the MON-
 GALS, and other people of TARTAR ex-
 traction, who inhabit on the confines of RUS-
 SIA and CHINA, are accustomed to desert
 very often, by hundreds of families, from
 the lands of one empire to those of the o-
 ther, according as their caprice or interest
 prompts them; which is often the subject

of altercations between the two empires.
 In order to remedy these inconveniences, it
 was agreed in the last treaty, that, for the
 future, such deserters should not be received
 by either power, but should honestly be re-
 turned to the place from whence they came.
 From this article the CHINESE pretend a
 right to reproach the RUSSES with not act-

strated,

MAY. strated, " That, if he would please to consider the vast
1722. " distance between ST. PETERSBURG and PEKIN, he

~~~~~ " would himself judge whether it was possible for the  
" courier, dispatched on this affair, to be returned al-  
" ready, unless he could fly; that, as to the rest, he  
" himself knew that affairs of such consequence were  
" not the business of a day, and required other things  
" to adjust them than secret correspondence." He  
shook his head at this answer, because there was then a  
report current at PEKIN, that orders were arrived at SE-  
LINGINSKY, from the Czar, not to restore the deserters  
before spoken of. Some moments afterwards he asked  
me, " If I would communicate to him the news, when  
" I should receive my letters." Upon which I assured  
him, " That I should conceal nothing from him, whe-  
" ther it regarded him in particular, or regarded the  
" court; seeing such affairs could not be communi-  
" cated to me, but by express orders of the Czar, my  
" master; which, whatever desire I might have, I dared  
" not keep secret." This minister, not thinking he  
had yet sufficient reason to be satisfied, demanded a-

ing candidly, in deferring so long the restitu-  
tion of 700 families of their subjects, which  
went over to the RUSSIAN territories since  
the conclusion of this treaty; and the RUS-

SES, on their side, also reclaim a good  
number of families, and insist on its being  
equitable to come to a liquidation of their  
reciprocal pretensions.



new of me, "If, when I should receive private letters, MAY.

"I would let him have a copy?" I answered thereupon, 1722.

"That it was certainly the first time, since the world

"began, such a proposal was made; but that I could

"not believe that he spoke in earnest on this occasion,

"although it was a little too late for raillery." This

answer being not altogether such as he hoped for, he

changed, for some time, the discourse, by saying, "That

"he had an intention of telling his Majesty, that the

"caravan was almost ready to depart; and of receiv-

"ing, at the same time, his orders with regard to my

"person." Whereupon I desired him "To put his Ma-

"jesty in mind of the affair, on the subject of which I

"had so often made instances to him." At length he

began to talk to me of my stay at PEKIN, saying, "That

"the term which was agreed with Mr. de ISMAYLOFF,

"for my stay at this court, wanted little of being ex-

"pired." And he made me fully to comprehend, that

I ought to prepare to return with the caravan. Upon

which we disputed together long enough, and I told

him, on this occasion, "That if he would please to

"remember that I assisted on all the conferences that

"were held on this subject; that I had read, and had

"in my custody, all the correspondence of Mr. de IS-



MAY. "MAYLOFF, with the council, about his negotiations;

1722. "and, that I was at all the audiences which his Maje-

sty had granted to that minister, he could not doubt,  
 "but that what was transacted by Mr. de ISMAYLOFF;  
 "from his arrival till his departure, was as well known  
 "to me as to himself." I further alledged to him, on  
 this subject, the resolution of the month of February,  
 1721, which he himself sent to Mr. de ISMAYLOFF;  
 wherein it was said, "That his Majesty had given his  
 "consent to the residence of an agent at his court,  
 "without any mention regarding the time, directly or  
 "indirectly." But this lord, notwithstanding he had  
 nothing to answer to what I advanced, held himself  
 strictly to his first decision, that my stay had been a-  
 greed to only till the return of the present caravan.  
 And this altercation did not cease till I gave him for  
 a final answer, "That the Czar, my master, not hav-  
 "ing ordered me to enter this empire in spite of the  
 "court, or to continue to reside in it contrary to the  
 "good pleasure of the Bogdoi-Chan, I was obliged to  
 "conform myself, on this occasion, to all that his Ma-  
 "jesty should think fit to determine in regard to me."  
 After which he showed me a small letter, with an ad-  
 dress in the RUSS language, saying it came from NANITI



TURSOFF, interpreter at SELINGINSKY, and that the MAY.  
 Kutuchtu\* had sent it to PEKIN, that it might be de- 1722.  
 livered to me. He added, "That he knew very well,  
 " that since the departure of Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, I had  
 " received a good number of letters, the contents of  
 " which I had communicated to no body; but as to  
 " this letter, I must determine to open it in his pre-  
 " fence, and let him take a copy of it, if I wished to  
 " have it; for if he could not prevail so far upon me,  
 " I should not read it neither, as he would take care  
 " to return it whence it came." He gave orders, for  
 this purpose, to two translators, who were then pre-  
 sent, to set themselves by me, and to read the letter  
 at the same time I did. As I had not yet opened the  
 letter, I asked him, "What occasioned a curiosity so  
 " unallowable? and if he did not know, that this pro-  
 " cedure was directly contrary to the rights of nati-  
 " ons?" His answer was, "That he was well enough  
 " apprised, that what he did on this occasion was a  
 " little irregular; but this letter happening to fall into  
 " his hands, he expected that I would not make much

\* The Kutuchtu is an high-priest be-  
 longing to the MONGALLS and the Northern  
 KALMUCKS. He was formerly no more than  
 a sub-delegate of the Delay-Lama, in these

parts; but he hath, by degrees, found means  
 to withdraw from the obedience of his ma-  
 ster, and to deify himself at the expence of  
 the Delay-Lama.



MAY. "difficulty of communicating the contents to him;

1722. "and that I might determine on the alternative he

"had proposed." Thereupon I delivered him the letter, sealed as it was, and desired him to reflect seriously on the consequence such an unwarrantable curiosity might produce; and, in the mean time, I should see to what lengths he would carry his authority over my letters. After which I left him, and retired to my quarters.

The 5th, two Mandarins came to me, on his part, to see "If I would not resolve to comply with his will, "in regard to the said letter." I charged them to tell him, on my part, "That I always found myself ready "to do him all imaginable service, which he could in "honour expect; but what he desired, on this occasion, "was so unreasonable, that I could not but consider it "as an affront, which he had an intention wantonly to "give me; and that he might depend on being obliged, at a proper time, to give me satisfaction."

The 6th, the two translators above-mentioned were commanded to CZCHAN-ZCHUMNIENNE, by order of this minister, which made me think they had proceeded as far as to open my letter; but I was soon convinced of the contrary; for



The 7th, a Mandarin, accompanied by a clerk, came to bring me the said letter, which had not the least mark of having been opened. He, at the same time, made me a compliment from the Allegamba, saying, "That he desired I would conceive no ill opinion of him, upon what had passed between us on the subject of this letter; in as much as he assured me, there was nothing serious on his side, in this adventure; and that he only took the liberty of having a little pleasantry with me; not altogether without flattering himself, that I might not be averse to comply with his desire, on this occasion. But now, being convinced that I was firmly resolved against this sort of complaisance, to any person whatsoever, he would no longer delay sending me the letter in question, and, at the same time, to assure me of his friendship." After having received the letter, I let him know, in answer, "That I had myself, in the beginning, looked on this affair as a jest; but, finding he pushed it too far, I had been obliged to regard it in another light; seeing I had never looked on the talking in such a manner to be jesting. Nevertheless, that, after the positive assurances that the Allegamba gave me, that there was nothing serious on his

MAY. 1722.

" part



MAY. "part of this affair, I ought to consider it in the same  
1722. "light; desiring him, in time to come, to make use of  
"other persons, not of me, for his diversion."

After which, having opened the letter, I found indeed that it was from the said TURSOFF, dated URGU, 20th of April, 1722. And as the Mandarin and clerk, who brought the letter, were still in my chamber, when I began to read it, I made my interpreter translate it to them by word of mouth, in the MONGALL language, to the end that they might communicate the contents to the Allegamba, and know of him if he would grant me a conference on the subject of this affair, or would rather receive from me a memorial thereupon.

The 8th, the same Mandarin came to my house, and upon my desiring to know if he had acquitted himself of the commission I gave him the day before, to the Allegamba, he answered in the affirmative, and that he was ordered to bring me his answer, which was, "That  
"the Bogdoi-Chan would hear nothing for the future  
"talked of any commerce of the RUSSES, in his empire,  
"until all the disturbances on the frontiers were entirely adjusted; and as, for this reason, there might  
"continue a long space of time before any caravan  
"might come again to PEKIN, the Bogdoi-Chan found



“ it proper that the agent should return with the pre- MAY.  
“ sent caravan; and when the commerce between the 1722.  
“ two empires should come to be renewed, he should  
“ likewise be permitted to return to PEKIN.” Where-  
upon I made answer to the Allegamba, “ That the or-  
“ ders I received from the Czar, were, as he himself well  
“ knew, to remain at PEKIN till he should recal me;  
“ but as I was in no condition to oppose the orders of  
“ the Bogdoi-Chan, I was obliged to have patience,  
“ and to resolve to do what I had no power to avoid  
“ doing; nevertheless, that this was no answer to what  
“ I desired to know from him, and that I waited for  
“ it with impatience, as I did for a clear explanation  
“ upon this precipitate manner of breaking off all com-  
“ merce and correspondence, between the two empires,  
“ without waiting for a resolution upon the affairs of  
“ the frontiers, and without any declaration of war, or  
“ other previous mark of hostility on either side.” But  
the Mandarin declined to charge himself with such a  
message, he not thinking it proper for him to repeat  
such terms as it was couched in to the Allegamba, say-  
ing, I must either seek an opportunity to tell him my-  
self, or demand a conference, for that purpose, by my  
interpreter.



MAY.

1722.

The same day, in the afternoon, I sent my interpreter to the council, to acquaint the Allegamba, by means of the Mandarins he might find there, that I had, the same day, received the orders of the Bogdoi-Chan for my return to RUSSIA; but I had received no answer on his part, upon the affair which was the subject I wanted to confer with him upon; for which reason, if he could not spare time to speak with me himself, he would, at least, let me know whether he would receive a memorial, on that subject, from me or not.

The 9th, another Mandarin came to me, and acquainted me, that the Allegamba had been informed of the subject, concerning which I had sent my interpreter to the council the day before; and, as he had not a moment to spare, to confer personally with me, he had sent this same Mandarin to me, to whom I might explain myself on what I had to say to him; as the Allegamba had given him orders to make him a faithful report of every thing which I should charge him with. Upon which I told him, that I wished he would inform the Allegamba that I prayed him to give me, under his hand, a precise answer to the points following, viz.

I. " If the Bogdoi-Chan was disposed, before my departure,



“ departure, to receive and to answer the credentials  
 “ which I was charged with from his Czarish Majesty? MAY. 1722.

II. “ If any suitable satisfaction was to be expected  
 “ for the injuries done to his Czarish Majesty’s subjects  
 “ by the Tush-du-Chan, or, at least, by his orders?

III. “ What was the reason that they would not  
 “ grant a free passage to the letters, addressed to the  
 “ council and to me, which remained on the frontiers?

IV. “ In case the Bogdoi-Chan should persist in the  
 “ resolution of sending me home, what I should say to  
 “ the Czar, my master, regarding the perpetual peace  
 “ between the two empires?

V. “ Supposing that, contrary to expectation, my  
 “ departure might be deferred, I desired to know, if,  
 “ in conformity to the treaties of peace, the Bogdoi-  
 “ Chan would grant me post-horses for my journey, or  
 “ whether I must find them myself?”

The 10th, there came to me a Mandarin, from the  
 Allegamba, to inform me, “ That there was no likeli-  
 “ hood that the Bogdoi-Chan would alter his resolu-  
 “ tion with regard to my departure; that no person  
 “ had the boldness to speak again to his Majesty, after  
 “ he had once explained himself so positively on this  
 “ affair. But that the Allegamba, in his turn, wished



MAY. " to be informed why I demanded so precisely to know

1722. " the motives of my being sent away; and why I infi-

" sted so strenuously to have a clear explanation of the  
" intentions of the Bogdoi-Chan towards the Czar;  
" that he did not know whether I durst make such de-  
" mands, in case the Bogdoi-Chan should be pleased  
" to speak personally to me, without my being afraid  
" that he would make complaints of it to the Czar my  
" master." Upon which I returned him as follows, viz.  
" That it was absolutely necessary for me to be fully in-  
" formed of what I desired to know; that, without this  
" being cleared up, I could not well resolve to depart, see-  
" ing it appeared evidently, that since the departure of  
" Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, the court had entirely changed  
" its disposition regarding the preservation of the good  
" understanding between the two empires; that the Al-  
" legamba himself could not be ignorant, how many of  
" his Czarish Majesty's subjects had, immediately after  
" the conclusion of the last treaty of peace, deserted, and  
" come to settle on the lands in the dominions of the  
" Bogdoi-Chan, without the Czar's having shown any  
" resentment to this time, notwithstanding the same  
" was directly contrary to the sense of the treaty; that  
" the Czar, on this occasion, far from forbidding the  
" subjects



" subjects of CHINA entrance into his dominions, had MAY.  
 " always permitted them, without interruption, to en- 1722.  
 " joy, in his dominions, an entire liberty, as well in re-  
 " gard to trade as all other affairs which could con-  
 " cern them, not even excepting some of those very  
 " deserters, who, having affairs to transact at some pla-  
 " ces in the Czar's dominions, had been no less wel-  
 " come than the others, subjects of the Bogdoi-Chan;  
 " but now, that 700 of the subjects of CHINA had pas-  
 " sed the frontiers, and would establish themselves on  
 " the lands belonging to RUSSIA, that would forth-  
 " with forbid all commerce, not receive any more let-  
 " ters, and in fine, at one stroke, break off all com-  
 " munication between the two empires; and that with-  
 " out even waiting the answer of the governor-general  
 " of SIBERIA to the letter wrote to him on the subject,  
 " which was the only certain means of knowing whe-  
 " ther his Czarish Majesty intended to retain these  
 " people, or to make them return; that, to conclude,  
 " I prayed the Allegamba to consider, if it was not  
 " much more easy to accommodate this affair by treat-  
 " ing of it with more mildness, than to push it with an  
 " haughtiness not to be born with \*."

\* It is certain that the judgment of the late Emperor, either from jealousy, or the



MAY.

1722. Whereupon the Mandarin told me, he could not positively undertake for his daring to say all this to the

Allegamba; but that, if a proper occasion offered, he would not fail of doing it faithfully. He told me further, on the part of that minister, that the Mandarins, who had been sent last year, by command of the Bogdoi-Chan, to pass the frontiers of RUSSIA, were returned, they not being permitted to proceed on their journey, before the governor-general of SIBERIA was made acquainted with it; that the Allegamba might expect to wait long enough for an answer, as well upon this affair, as upon all other affairs which regarded the interest of the two empires, so long as they did not allow of a free passage to the letters wrote, concerning them, to the court. I received no more in answer then.

In the mean time, I had made a demand, some time ago, of the council, for a free passage for the caravan by the old road of KERLINDE, (which the former cara-

artifices of some secret enemies, was so altered, with regard to the RUSSIA-trade, a little before his death, that there was no other way of adjusting it, but the having-recourse to arms; which was fully resolved on, on the part of RUSSIA, when the news of the death of this monarch arrived there; which suspended the execution of this design, till they should see clearly into the de-

signs of his successor. But the death of PETER the Great entirely broke these measures; so that the affairs between RUSSIA and CHINA are still, at this time, on the same terms they were on the departure of Mr. de LANGE from PEKIN; and, since the last caravan that left PEKIN with him, no caravan hath been sent from SIBERIA to PEKIN.



vans had been used to take,) to save them the inconveniencies attending the route by the deserts, where the people and the cattle had much to endure for want of water; and, for this purpose, I sent my interpreter, with a clerk of the caravan, on the 14th, to the council, to know if the Bogdoi-Chan had given his consent, or not. But they told him for answer, “ That “ they expected to have been freed from their importing the council about their beggarly commerce, “ after they had been told so often, that the council “ would not embarrass themselves any more about affairs that were only beneficial to the RUSSES; and “ that, of course, they had only to return by the way “ they came.”

MAY.

1722.

The same day, I sent to the house of the first minister, to know if I could have the honour of seeing him. But he excused himself; saying, that, being far advanced in years, he wanted to be at ease.

Nevertheless I did not refrain going myself, the next day, which was the 15th, to his house; and, the guard at the gate suffering me to pass without interruption, I entered directly into the court-yard, and acquainted him with my being there, by one of his servants; desiring he would afford me a quarter of an hour's audi-



MAY. audience. But he sent me word, " That he was not at  
1722. " leisure to see me; and that, as the affairs, about  
" which I would speak to him, very probably only re-  
" garded the council of foreign affairs, he desired I  
" would address myself to them. I thereupon let him  
know, by the same domestick, " That I was come to  
" speak with him, as the first minister of the Bogdoi-  
" Chan; and if I had not had a very pressing occasion  
" of applying to him, he might be sure I would have  
" been very averse to have come to give him trouble;  
" but, that it concerned us equally, both him and my-  
" self, that I should have the honour of seeing him;  
" therefore I was determined not to leave his house  
" without speaking with him." Upon this so precise a  
declaration, the same domestick returned, a few mo-  
ments after, and showed me into a grand saloon, well  
enough furnished after the CHINESE manner, where  
the master of the household of this minister came to  
present me tea and milk, till his master should come.  
After I had waited about a quarter of an hour in this  
apartment, the Allegada at length came, and desired my  
excuse, with a number of compliments, after the CHI-  
NESE manner, that he was not always able to see me  
when I might require it; because his great age, and mul-  
tipli-



duplicity of affairs with which he was charged, did not MAY.  
 permit him. Whereupon, we being both seated, I told 1722.  
 him, " That, if the affairs which I had to represent to  
 " him, regarded only my own person, I should not have  
 " ventured to incommode him; but, as they regarded  
 " our common masters, and the preservation of a good  
 " understanding between the two empires; or, to say  
 " all in two words, peace or war between the two na-  
 " tions; I thought it my duty to seek, before my de-  
 " parture, by every way possible, an opportunity of  
 " explaining myself thereupon with him; that he knew  
 " that the free passage of the caravans of SIBERIA  
 " was made, in some degree, an essential point in all  
 " the treaties between the two empires; that he knew,  
 " moreover, that Mr. de ISMAYLOFF had declar-  
 " ed, more than once, that his Czarish Majesty could  
 " never allow that they should any more cavil on  
 " that article; that he further knew, that the free  
 " trade of the subjects of RUSSIA, at URGA, was po-  
 " sitively stipulated by the late treaty, in which they  
 " could not make the least alteration, without a mani-  
 " fest violation of the said treaty; that he knew in fine,  
 " that it was with the agreement of the Bogdoi-Chan,  
 " and by virtue of a resolution of the council, in writ-  
 " ing,



MAY. "ing, that I remained at PEKIN, after the departure

1722. "of Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, in quality of agent, impower-

"ed by the court of RUSSIA, till such time as his Cza-

"rish Majesty should be pleased to recal me. Not-

"withstanding which, not regarding such solemn en-

"gagements, they had, in regard to this last caravan,

"treated us so ill, that, if they had been at open war

"with RUSSIA, they could not have done worse; that

"they had kept shut up, during many months, the

"commiffary of the caravan, with all his people, just

"as if they had been slaves; that there was no kind

"of insult to which they did not expose those who

"had a desire to come and trade with our people.

"And yet more, they had caused the RUSS subjects

"to be shamefully driven out of URG A, who had

"come to trade there on the faith of publick treaties.

"And, as to what regards myself, they had made me

"suffer more affronts, on all occasions that offered,

"than can be imagined; in the end, not yet satisfied

"with all those steps, the president of the council had

"made it be declared to me positively, that there

"should not absolutely, for the future, any caravan be

"admitted, before the affair of the frontiers should be

"regulated to the satisfaction of the Bogdoi-Chan;

"and,



“ and, at the same time, caused it to be signified to MAY.  
“ me, that I must prepare to depart with the caravan, 1722.  
“ because his Majesty would not suffer me to remain  
“ any longer at his court, in the uncertainty that af-  
“ fairs stood in between the two empires. That, if this  
“ order regarded me only as a private person, there  
“ would be nothing in it which did not depend entirely  
“ on the pleasure of the Bogdoi-Chan; but having been  
“ once admitted by him to reside at his court, in qua-  
“ lity of agent of his Czarish Majesty, it was a maxim,  
“ practised by all the civilized nations in the world, not  
“ to send away, in a manner so indecent, a person ves-  
“ ted with a publick character, unless entirely to break  
“ off all good understanding with his master. That if  
“ they desired very ardently, as they asserted on all oc-  
“ casions, the restitution of the deserters in question,  
“ and an amicable convention in regard to the fron-  
“ tiers, he would permit me to tell him, that, it ap-  
“ peared to me, they took quite the wrong way to  
“ obtain them; and that the sending me away, so far  
“ from facilitating those affairs, was most certainly the  
“ greatest obstacle they could think of. That I thought  
“ it my duty to remonstrate the foregoing matters at this  
“ time, that they might still be remedied; because, af-



MAY. "ter my departure, I did not well see how it would be

1722. "possible to get out of this embarrassment by amicable

means. The minister thereupon answered me, " That  
" it being already so long a time since the RUSSES had  
" given them the expectation of regulating the affairs of  
" the frontiers, conform to the treaties concluded be-  
" tween the two empires, without their taking the least  
" thought of bringing things to a close, his Majesty had  
" come to a resolution not to admit any caravan be-  
" fore he should be fully satisfied, on the part of RUS-  
" SIA, of their adherence to treaties; and, as thereby  
" my residence at his court became quite unnecessary,  
" his Majesty saw nothing that should oblige him to  
" keep me longer in his empire. That, in regard to  
" what passed at URGA, the Tush-du-Chan had good  
" reasons for removing our people from his residence,  
" who had committed great insolencies, no ways con-  
" form to treaties. That, as to what regarded the ill  
" usage which I pretended the caravan had suffered,  
" he did not well know of what I spoke; but, as to  
" their being kept shut up a longer time than ordina-  
" ry, it was our own fault, who would have made in-  
" novations in the trade of the caravans. In fine, in one  
" word, that his Majesty was tired of receiving the law,  
in



" in his own country, from foreigners, of whom his  
 " subjects reaped no profit; and, that, if the court of  
 " RUSSIA delayed longer doing him justice, he should  
 " be obliged to do it himself, by such ways as he should  
 " find most convenient." Upon which I replied, " That  
 " I was much surpris'd to find the Bogdoi-Chan in a  
 " disposition so little favourable towards his Czarish  
 " Majesty, after he had the goodness to testify himself,  
 " on more than one occasion, to Mr. de ISMAYLOFF,  
 " that he desired nothing more than always to live in  
 " a good understanding with the Czar, my master; and  
 " that I could not conceive what caused his change of  
 " sentiments so suddenly, with regard to his Czarish  
 " Majesty. That if the court of CHINA had restituti-  
 " ons to demand from us, we had the like to expect  
 " from them; and that, in any shape, there was no rea-  
 " son that could, in justice, oblige us to restore their  
 " deserters, so long as they retained ours. That if the  
 " indulgence of the Czar, my master, in the affair of  
 " ALBAZIN\*, had rais'd rash hopes in any persons, who

\* ALBAZIN was a little town of about 500 or 600 houses, which the RUSSSES had built in a very fertile country, upon the south side of the river AMOOR, near the mouth of the river ALBAZIN. But at the end of the year 1715, the Eastern MONGALLS, supported by the CHINESE, besieged it, and, having carried it after a siege of two years, rais'd it to the ground.



MAY. " are ill informed of the forces of RUSSIA, and of the  
1722. " monarch who reigns over them, I was perswaded, that

~~~~~ " a monarch so enlightened, as was the Bogdoi-Chan,  
" would not suffer himself to be blinded by such delu-
" sive appearances; and that he knew full well how to
" distinguish an indulgence, arising from magnanimity
" and esteem, for a prince his friend and ally, from a for-
" ced compliance, grounded on weakness and indolence.
" That as I had, in my instructions, orders to apply my
" utmost endeavours for the preservation of the good
" understanding between the two empires, I thought I
" might tell him, that I was exceedingly surpris'd at
" the proceedings of the CHINESE ministry, on this oc-
" casion; that he could not be ignorant that it depend-
" ed only on his Czarish Majesty to finish the war with
" SWEDEN, in the most honourable manner; and that
" perhaps this peace was actually made at the time I
" was speaking to him; after which, I saw nothing that
" could prevent the Czar, my master, from turning his
" arms to this side, in case they exercised his patience
" too much. That I gave him my word, that all the
" great difficulties, which perhaps might be imagined
" in CHINA to attend such an enterprize, would vanish
" immediately, if ever his Czarish Majesty should re-
solve

“ solve on transporting himself to the frontiers; for he
“ was a Prince that did not suffer himself to be hin- MAY.
“ dered by difficulties; and that they might then have 1722.
“ sufficient cause to repent their having despised the
“ friendship of a monarch who was not accustomed to
“ receive offences with impunity, and who was inferior
“ to no monarch in the world, neither in grandeur nor
“ power.” This discourse was not at all to the Ale-
gada’s taste; therefore, after some silence, he deman-
ded of me, “ If I was authoris’d to talk to him in the
“ manner I did? and if I was not apprehensive of being
“ disavowed by the court of RUSSIA, in case they should
“ make complaint upon the menaces I us’d to them?”
I thereupon replied to him, “ That, in the state to
“ which I saw affairs were brought, I thought it neces-
“ sary not to disguise any thing to him, to the end that
“ the Bogdoi-Chan, faithfully informed by him, of all he
“ had to consider for and against this affair, might there-
“ by be the better enabled to determine with himself,
“ thereupon, in a manner suitable to his great wisdom
“ and justice. That nevertheless it was wrong to take
“ what I had said on this occasion for menaces, seeing
“ they were only mere reflections, which I was desirous
“ he should make on the unhappy consequences which
“ the

MAY. "the disdainful conduct they showed, in regard to us,

1722. "might in time produce; and that I was so little ap-

prehen-
sive of being disavowed by the court of RUS-
SIA, that I was ready to give him in writing every
word I had said to him; and that it would be the
greatest service he could render me, to speak out of
hand concerning it to the Bogdoi-Chan, the more as
I was well assured, that, if they would give the least
attention to the irregular manner in which they had
acted in this affair, with a friendly and allied power,
they would not fail of comprehending that my in-
tentions were sincere, and only had for its aim the pre-
servation of the harmony between the two empires."

The answer of the minister to this was, "That it be-
ing his Majesty's custom never to take any resolution,
without first well weighing all circumstances, he ne-
ver changed his measures for any reason whatsoever;
and, after what he had declared positively, in regard
to the caravan and my person, he had no inclination
to propose to him a change of sentiment in this re-
gard. That we had nothing to do but to make a
beginning in complying with our engagements; af-
ter which they would see what they had to do as to
the rest." Upon which I concluded, by telling him,

"That

“ That the case being so, I saw plainly, that it was in MAY.
“ vain, on our side, to use more endeavours for preserv- 1722.
“ ing the good understanding between the two empires,
“ as long as they would contribute nothing towards it
“ on their side; that therefore the game must go on,
“ seeing the dice were thrown already. That however
“ I had, at least, the satisfaction of having done my
“ duty in advertising him, as first minister of the Bog-
“ doi-Chan, of the unhappy consequences which would
“ ensue from all this; and that was the sole reason
“ which made me think it absolutely necessary, for me
“ to give him the trouble of this visit.” After which
I rose up and took leave of him. On parting he re-
conducted me to the entrance of the saloon, where he
stayed till I was mounted on horseback.

The same day I was likewise to take leave of the
Poyamba, or great marshal of the court; and, after
having returned him thanks, which were truly due to
him, for all the goodness which he had showed to me
ever since the first moment I had the honour of being
known to him. I profited myself of the present op-
portunity, to represent succinctly to him the same
things which I had represented to the Alegada. He
thereupon assured me, “ That he was sorry to see that
“ the

MAY. " the success of my negotiations did not answer my

1722. " wishes. That it was true, that the Bogdoi Chan was

~~~~~  
" very much piqued that he saw there was no end  
" made to the affair of the deserters; and that he had  
" certain advice, that our court had no desire to satis-  
" fy him on this article; and that we only sought to  
" protract time: that it was on these considerations  
" that he had been prevailed on, by the ministry, to  
" order my return. That, for his part, he was asto-  
" nished to see that our court could hesitate a moment  
" to sacrifice some hundreds of families, who were in  
" the utmost poverty, to the solid advantages which we  
" might promise ourselves, from the friendship which  
" the Bogdoi-Chan had conceived for the person of the  
" Czar my master; and he made no manner of doubt,  
" but that, if the Czar had been well informed of the  
" justice of the pretensions of the court of CHINA, and  
" the little importance of that affair, he would instantly  
" have given orders for restoring the families reclaim-  
" ed." I would have had him consider the distance of  
the places, and that it was in a manner impossible that  
an answer could have arrived from ST. PETERSBURG, on  
this affair, since the departure of Mr. de ISMAYLOFF.  
But he stopped my mouth by telling me, " That he  
" could



“ could not say precisely what the distance was, but he  
 “ knew very well, that, on other occasions, our cour- MAY.  
 “ ers had made the journey in much less time. That 1722.  
 “ he advised me to do my best in this affair, when I  
 “ should arrive on the frontiers; and that he could as-  
 “ sure me, that when the Bogdoi-Chan was made easy  
 “ on this point, he would explain himself very reason-  
 “ ably on all the rest of what we should wish to have  
 “ done; that however, as to myself, I had cause to  
 “ be well satisfied with the sentiments the court enter-  
 “ tained of me; and that his Majesty had himself de-  
 “ clared, that, in case affairs should come to be accom-  
 “ modated, he would not be sorry to see me return to  
 “ PEKIN.”

The 16th, I went to pay my court to the Bogdoi-Chan, upon his departure from PEKIN to pass the summer at JEGCHOLL, but had not the honour of speaking to him at this time; his Majesty letting me know, by the master of the ceremonies, “ That he recommended the same thing to me which he had charged  
 “ Mr. de ISMAYLOFF with, to tell his Czarish Majesty\*.

\* When Mr. de ISMAYLOFF had his audience of leave of the late Emperor of CHINA, this monarch declared expressly, that he would permit Mr. de LANGE to remain at PEKIN, in quality of agent of the court of RUSSIA, expecting that Mr. de ISMAYLOFF would, on his return, prevail with his Czarish Majesty to send back



MAY. "That, for the rest, he wished me a good journey;

1722. "and expected that I would not fail to write from the

"frontiers, in case I should there be informed of any  
"news from EUROPE."

A little before I received the message from his Majesty I had an interview with the Allegamba, who, after an infinite deal of caressing and flattery, begged of me to labour, as much as possible, to forward the returning their deserters; at the same time adding, "That  
"the Bogdoi-Chan had great reliance on me in regard  
"to this affair; in expectation, that, according to all  
"appearances, I would not be backward to return soon  
"to CHINA, either on the subject in question, or on  
"the subject of commerce." I assured him thereupon,  
"That his Czarish Majesty, having subjects in abundance, had at no time the least temptation to keep  
"the vassals of neighbouring powers unjustly." And I promised, at the same time, to write to him, if, at my arrival on the frontiers, I should learn that any resolution was taken on this affair. Afterwards I demanded

the deserted families in question; but, in case that should not be effected instantly, he would not only send away the said agent, but would receive no more caravans, till he should be entirely satisfied on this article.

But Mr. de ISMAYLOFF, on his arrival at MOSCO, found the court so busily employed about the expedition to PERSIA, that he found no opportunity of getting a final resolution on this affair.



of him, "For what reason they refused conveyance of  
"the letters which were on the frontiers." At the MAY.  
same time I led him to imagine some appearance that 1722.  
those letters bore something relating to their affair.  
Whereupon he answered me, "That, if it was possible  
"to believe it to be so, he would not make the least  
"difficulty of instantly ordering the letters to be  
"brought hither; but that, if they contained orders  
"for the rendering back their deserters, they would  
"not have failed to communicate the same to the  
"Mandarin, who kept himself at SELINGINSKY purely  
"on that affair."

At length, not seeing any appearance of being able  
to prolong my stay at PEKIN till the recal of his Czarish  
Majesty, I pressed the commissary to neglect nothing  
that might facilitate his departure as soon as possible;  
and thereupon he dispatched beforehand,

On the 25th, a part of his baggage for KRASNA-  
GORA, which is a place, a day's journey without the  
Great Wall, appointed for the rendezvous of all the  
caravan. On this occasion they did not give a guard  
of CHINESE soldiers to the caravan, as had been  
formerly practised; but they had ordered all the  
towns, where they should stop, to give them guards;



JUNE. besides which, there was a Bonska, or courier of the  
 1722. council of the affairs of the MONGALLS, ordered to at-  
 tend the baggage, who was not to leave them without  
 a new order.

## J U N E.

The 6th, a Mandarin, named TULISHIN, let me know, that, having received orders from the Bogdoi-Chan to accompany me to SELINGINSKY, and to furnish provisions and post-horses on the road, he would be glad to be informed when I thought I should be ready to depart; that he might take his measures accordingly, and dispatch in good time the couriers necessary for the deserts, to make the requisite dispositions for my passage.

The 8th, the commissary went to the council, to demand a guard for the caravan; but they granted none; acquainting him, at the same time, that the Mandarin TULISHIN was also charged with the care of the caravan; and that, as he would be obliged frequently to leave the route of the caravan, for providing victuals and horses which I should have occasion for on my journey, he was to have with him a clerk and two couriers, under his command, who were not to leave the  
 caravan



caravan before they should safely arrive at SELINGINSKY. JUNE. 1722.

The same day, 36 carriages were dispatched, laden with merchandise, for the place of rendezvous, without any other escort than some of our own people, and a courier of the council.

The 16th, the Allegamba invited me to come to him at the palace of the Bogdoi-Chan; and, when I arrived, he presented me with two pieces of damask, on the part of the Chan; telling me, "That his Majesty having received presents from me, on the entrance of the new year, he was pleased, in his turn, to make me a present of these two pieces of damask." I received this present with all due respect; assuring this minister, that I should eternally cherish the remembrance of all the gracious favours which the Bogdoi-Chan had deigned to honour me with, during my residence in his empire; and that, in whatever place I should be, in time to come, I would never fail of making it a subject of particular glory to me.

J U L Y.

The 4th, the Allegamba sent a Mandarin to me, to show me a letter, which he had very lately received from the Mandarin who resided at SELINGINSKY, in which he made



JULY. made heavy complaints of the chicaneries that he was

1722. forced to bear with, during his residence in that place,

as well from the officers of his Czarish Majesty as the other inhabitants of that city; adding, " That every  
" body demanded of him perpetually, the reason why  
" he tarried there so long, and if he did not intend  
" soon to return home. That thereupon having de-  
" manded of them, if they had come to any resolution  
" on the affair which was the cause of his being there,  
" they had answered him, that they had no other or-  
" ders but to conduct him back, with all civility, when  
" he should think proper to return." He related be-  
sides in this letter, " That the allowance they gave  
" him, for the subsistence of himself and retinue, was  
" so very scanty, that, if he had not had of his own  
" money wherewithal to supply himself, he should  
" have been reduced to great extremities. They  
" had, besides, pressed him very hard on the subject of  
" the letters, for the council and for me, that were ar-  
" rived on the frontiers; and they would, by force,  
" know of him the reason why he refused to receive  
" the letters, and to forward them to PEKIN; but that  
" he had always answered them, that, his sole errand to  
" SELINGINSKY being on the affair of the deserters, he  
" could



“ could not charge himself, either with letters, or any  
“ other affair whatsoever.” After the Mandarin had  
explained to me the contents of this letter, he told  
me, that the Allegamba demanded to know of me,  
“ Whether it was possible that all this could be done  
“ by order of his Czarish Majesty.” I let him know,  
in answer, “ That if he had formed ideas of the per-  
“ son of the Czar, my master, by those passages, he  
“ would do well entirely to efface them; for that, as  
“ his Czarish Majesty was more magnanimous than to  
“ treat, in the manner there laid down, even prisoners  
“ of war in his dominions, he would certainly not be-  
“ gin so bad a practice with the subjects of an em-  
“ pire in amity with him, who came into his coun-  
“ try.” I added, that notwithstanding I had reason to  
complain of things of more consequence than this  
Mandarin, I was nevertheless so far from approving the  
want of complaisance used towards him, that, if the  
Allegamba thought fit to give me a copy of that let-  
ter, I was ready to take charge of it, and to make it  
my business that the Czar, my master, should be ac-  
quainted with it. But with regard to the orders, which  
this Mandarin hinted he was charged with, not to re-  
ceive any letters, though even for the council itself,  
before



JULY. before he should receive the deserters in question, I  
1722. could not help observing that such a procedure bespoke  
much coolness on their side.

The 8th, the Allegamba sent to me, in the evening, a Mandarin, who told me, after making me a compliment from him, that he would be, the next day, at the council; and that, if I had time to come there likewise, he would explain the reasons which determined the court to resolve on my return; and that he would give me the same in writing. Upon which I told him, I should come there with great pleasure, that I might be informed of them.

The 9th, having notice that the Allegamba was already arrived at the council, I forthwith mounted on horseback to go there also. He came in person to receive me at the door, and desired me to place myself at a little table with him. After which he gave me to understand, “ That it were to be wished that my residence  
“ at that court might continue longer, as the Bogdoi-  
“ Chan himself, and all the ministry in general, were so  
“ well satisfied with the conduct I had observed during my residence; that they had nothing to say against my person; that they had remarked, with  
“ much satisfaction, that, by the good order I had kept,  
“ the



“ the present caravan had begun and finished its com-  
 “ merce, without producing the least dispute between  
 “ the merchants of the two nations \*. It had also  
 “ formerly been too usual to see the servants and peo-  
 “ ple of the caravan do numberless insolencies in the  
 “ streets, and commit all sorts of excesses; but that,  
 “ for this time, they could not without surprise ob-  
 “ serve that nothing of this sort had appeared; but  
 “ that every thing passed with all desirable decency†”.

JULY.

1722.

After I had paid this compliment by another, I told him, “ That it was with intention of maintaining the  
 “ like good order, that his Czarish Majesty sent me to  
 “ CHINA; and that it would be owing to themselves, if  
 “ things, for the future, should not be carried on in

\* The CHINESE usually bought, from the caravan, goods on credit, for which, at the time when due, they could not pay; which occasioned very frequent disputes between the two nations; to remedy this, the court of PEKIN had been accustomed to put into the hands of the commissary, at his departure, all those who could not pay what they were indebted to the caravan, in order that he might compel them to pay as they best could; in which cases the commissaries had frequently committed great abuses, and treated the poor CHINESE, whom they had in their custody, in the most barbarous manner; which very much disgusted the people of PEKIN, and rendered them very averse to

trading with the RUSSIAN caravans.

† The excesses committed, by those of the caravan, had been but too frequent till this time; and the commissaries, in place of redressing those disorders, had been very often themselves the authors of them, without giving themselves the trouble of making the least satisfaction for them to the CHINESE, notwithstanding the great complaints to the RUSSIAN ministers thereupon on many occasions. In all appearance, what contributed principally to the good order observed by the RUSS-servants of this caravan, was their not getting brandy, at free cost, as they did when the CHINESE furnished the subsistence for the caravan.



JULY. "the same order; and if any other petty incidents did  
1722. "not come to an accommodation with the like ease."

After which, I prayed him to let me know the true source of the disorders which happened, at URG A, between the subjects of the Czar, my master, and the MONGALLS; and "wherefore they obliged the RUSSIA-  
"merchants to leave that place before they had finished their trade." He answered me thereupon, "That  
"it was done by orders of the Tush-du-Chan and his  
"council, as supreme judges in their country." Upon which I demanded of him, "Whether the Tush-  
"du-Chan was a sovereign prince of the MONGALLS,  
"or a subject of the Emperor of CHINA?" He replied,  
"That, in truth, the Chan was a vassal of the Bogdoi-  
"Chan's; but that did not hinder his being master in  
"his own country\*." I then prayed him to tell me,  
"Whether the Tush-du-Chan was obliged to conform  
"himself to the engagement stipulated by treaty, be-  
"tween the two empires, to the end, that I might

\* Though the Chan of the Western MONGALLS is tributary to the CHINESE, they have nevertheless a great regard for him at the court of CHINA; the more, as he is a very powerful prince, and, that in case of a revolt in CHINA, it is from him that the present imperial house is to expect the greatest assistance; his subjects being be-

yond comparison much better soldiers than the MONGALL CHINESE, insomuch, that, if he should be disobliged, and should join himself to the KALMUCKS, or to the RUSSSES, nothing could prevent his entrance into CHINA when he pleased, and probably bring about another revolution.

" know



“ know if we ought to address the court at PEKIN, on JULY.  
 “ the subject of satisfaction we had to demand on that 1722.  
 “ affair? or were to take it of the Tush-du-Chan? as  
 “ it was not to be expected that affair would be let  
 “ pass without an exact inquiry. That, for my part,  
 “ I thought the best means of terminating that affair  
 “ amicably, was, that they should order the Mandarin,  
 “ who was to accompany me on the journey, to go  
 “ with me to URGa, in our way to SELINGINSKY; to  
 “ the end, that, after having full information of this  
 “ affair, I might be able to send a circumstantial ac-  
 “ count of it to our ministry.” But he answered me  
 thereupon in these terms, “ With us no judge who  
 “ hath given a just sentence can be made responsible  
 “ for his judgement, was he no more than a mere  
 “ clerk. Your people who were at URGa have affront-  
 “ ed the lamas, as well by words as deeds; and they  
 “ have, moreover, attempted to carry off some MON-  
 “ GALL families from those quarters; it is for this reason  
 “ that the Tush-du-Chan was in the right to remove  
 “ them from his territories.” I answered him there-  
 upon, “ That this judge ought, most certainly, to ren-  
 “ der account of his judgment, because he had judged  
 “ people who were no manner of way under his jurif-  
 “ diction;



JULY. " diction; but he would have acted with justice if, af-

1722. " ter having sent the culpable to SELINGINSKY, he had

~~~~~ " prosecuted for satisfaction at that place. Whereas,  
" now that he hath punished the innocent equally with
" the guilty, and hath infringed the treaty of peace in
" so essential an article, his judgment cannot be re-
" garded but as a manifest act of violence." The Al-
" legamba, finding me insist so strenuously for an inquir-
" ry into this affair, smiling, told me, " Mr. Agent
" you do well to make so much work about this affair,
" but I do not know how to explain myself more pre-
" cisely upon it at present; all that I can say to you is,
" that all of it will be easily accommodated when we
" shall receive a satisfactory answer upon the affair of
" our deserters." After which he presented me a writ-
ing, which he said had been drawn up by order of the
Bogdoi-Chan, to serve for my information regarding the
reasons of my being sent away. Upon which we again
entered into dispute together; but as these gentlemen,
on these occasions, hold themselves strictly tied down to a
single word, whether essential to the affair they are upon
or not, it was impossible for me to draw from him any
other answer, than that they had not designed to grant
my remaining at PEKIN longer than the time of the
" present

JULY.

1722.

present caravan; and, that when the affair of the frontiers should be accommodated, they would not be wanting to give a definitive resolution, as well upon this article, as upon the other propositions which Mr. de ISMAYLOFF had made to the court. He afterwards presented to me a letter, saying it was wrote by order of the Bogdoi-Chan, to Prince CHERKASKY, governor general of SIBERIA*; but I having refused to receive the said letter, it displeased him a little and made him say, “That it was hardly civil in me to refuse a letter, “which the Emperor, his master, had ordered to be “written, and to be put into my hands.” I answered thereupon, “That I would not chuse to do what I did “on this occasion, if the letters which the said Prince “CHERKASKY, in quality of governor general of SIBERIA, had wrote to the council, were not likewise written by the order of the Czar, my master. That he “could give this letter to the Mandarin, who was to “accompany me to SELINGINSKY, with orders to receive the letters for the court which were lying there; “and, that being done, I should not then make the least “difficulty to receive the said letter.” He declared to

* The Prince CHERKASKY, governor general of SIBERIA, was recalled by the court of RUSSIA, in the year 1722, upon his own solicitations; and they afterwards sent thither a person in quality of vice governor, who remains there still.

JULY. me afterwards, that it was the pleasure of the Bogdoi-
1722. Chan that I should take JEGCHOLL in my way, to have

my audience of leave of his Majesty. And again re-
suming the article of the letter from the court for the
Prince CHERKASKY, he told me, " That what I had
" done on this occasion was not altogether so right;
" seeing it was not allowed to any person, when in CHI-
" NA, to oppose themselves to the will of the Empe-
" ror." Upon which I answered him, " That I was per-
" suaded his Majesty would put a different constructi-
" on on this affair, from what he did." But that I wish-
ed, in my turn, to know from him, " Upon what he
" grounded his suspicions, when he refused us, the last
" spring, the passage to the deserts for some of our
" people, whom we would have sent with money to
" provide subsistence for our horses; and, that under
" the pretext, that by such expeditions secret corrup-
" tion might be carried on, which might produce
" misunderstandings between the two empires." There-
upon he said, " That in reality he had no such suspi-
" cions; but that he would willingly prevent the disor-
" ders, which might have happened on the journey of
" these people; seeing, that if they had been robbed,
" or assassinated on the road, we would not have fail-

" ed

JULY.

1722.

“ed to demand satisfaction from the court.” There-
upon I put him in mind, “That he was now brought
“to explain himself; that it was not to hinder secret
“correspondence that he refused us passage, and that
“he might very well have spared himself that useless
“precaution, as to what regarded us; which had caused
“us an expence of some thousands of laen, for not
“being able to put our horses into stables, to which
“purpose the money we wanted to send to the deserts
“was appropriated; and had occasioned the death of a
“great many horses; and even those that survived were
“in such a miserable condition that they were by no
“means capable of serving in the waggons; which obliged
“our commissary to transport the greatest part
“of his baggage to SELINGINSKY by carriages hired at
“PEKIN, which could not be done but at a very considerable
“charge.” This answer made him a little
thoughtful; but at length he replied to me, “That
“he did not say so, but, be it so or not, we must now
“part good friends; to which end he prayed me to
“have no ill-will towards him upon account of the liberty
“he had taken to trifle and jest with me on the
“subject of the letter from TURSOFF; that he could
“assure me he had no ill intention on that occasion;
“and

JULY. "and hoped that I would be satisfied with this expla-

1722. "nation, and not think otherwise of that affair, in

~~~~~ "time to come, than as a piece of innocent raillery."

To which I answered him, "That, as to what regarded

"myself in particular, he might depend that I should

"absolutely think no more of it; but, for the rest, I

"could not do in it according to my own pleasure."

Whereupon he asked me, if, at my return to RUSSIA,

I should be obliged to give a relation, in writing, to

our ministry, of every thing that passed, during my re-

sidence in CHINA, in regard to my negociations; and,

having answered him yes, he said to me, that, in this

case, I would do well not to insert a number of trifling

things, which could answer no good end, but might

embroil matters more; for that it was much better

that a good understanding between the two empires

should continue, than that differences between them

should be widened. I replied thereupon, that, not

having been sent to the court of PEKIN as an instru-

ment for creating misunderstandings, I would make it

my business, in my relation, not to touch upon any

things but such as it was necessary for our court to be

informed of. After which we both rose up, and hav-

ing



ing mutually embraced, we took leave of each other, reciprocally wishing to meet again soon.

JULY.

1722.

The 12th, the commissary having left PEKIN, with all the rest of the caravan, I likewise departed for JEGCHOLL, where I arrived on the 15th; and having forthwith made known my arrival to the chamberlain of the Chan, he let me know he would instantly inform his Majesty; and, till he should receive his orders for appointing the day of my audience, the intendant of his Majesty's kitchen would take care that my table should be furnished with every thing I might have occasion for.

The 17th, I had my audience of leave of the Bogdoi-Chan, with the ceremonies usual at this court.

The 18th, I left JEGCHOLL, and met the caravan the 24th; which being still within the Great Wall, I passed it, the 26th, with the caravan, which I left, on the 28th, near KRASNA-GORA in the deserts. And, on the 26th of August, 1722, I arrived at SELINGINSKY, after having resided near 17 months at the court of CHINA.







A  
SUCCINCT RELATION  
OF MY  
JOURNEY  
TO  
DERBENT  
IN  
PERSIA,  
WITH  
THE ARMY OF RUSSIA  
COMMANDED BY  
HIS IMPERIAL MAJESTY  
PETER THE FIRST,  
IN THE YEAR M.DCC.XXII.







S U C C I N C T R E L A T I O N 1722.

O F M Y

## J O U R N E Y

T O

## D E R B E N T.

U P O N my return with the embassy from PEKIN, as hath been formerly mentioned, I found his Imperial Majesty, all the court, the general officers, and the nobility and gentry, from all the empire, assembled at MOSCO; and great preparations making, at that city, for the celebration of the festivals, appointed to be solemnized there, on account of the peace, concluded at ALAND in 1721, between RUSSIA and SWEDEN, after a war which had lasted more than twenty years.

These festivals were accompanied with masquerades, grand fire-works, balls, assemblies, &c. the detail of which, though it would swell this work to too large a bulk, yet I think it will not be unacceptable to the reader, briefly to relate one part of it, I mean the magnificent shows exhibited on this occasion; which I am induced



1722. to by the consideration, which at that time struck me, of PETER the Great his having always in view, even in his amusements, and times of diversion, all possible means of influencing his people to a liking of whatever tended to promote the good of his empire.

The RUSSIANS, in general, had a strong aversion to shipping and maritime affairs. In order to apprise them of the great advantages arising from a marine force, in his triumphant entry into MOSCO, he represented to his people that the peace, the rejoicings for which were now celebrating, was obtained by means of his naval strength.

The triumphant entry was made from a village, about seven miles from MOSCO, called SESWEDSKY.

The first of the cavalcade was a galley, finely carved and gilt, in which the rowers plied their oars as on the water. The galley was commanded by the high admiral of RUSSIA. Then came a frigate, of 16 small brass-guns, with three masts, completely rigged, manned with twelve or fourteen youths, habited like DUTCH skippers, in black velvet, who trimmed the sails, and performed all the manoeuvres as of a ship at sea. Then came most richly decorated barges, wherein sat the Empress and the ladies of the court. There were also pilot-boats, heav-  
ing



ing the lead, and above thirty other vessels, pinnaces, 1722. wherries, &c. each filled with masqueraders in the dresses of different nations. It was in the month of February, at which time all the ground was covered with snow, and all the rivers frozen. All these machines were placed on sledges, and were drawn, by horses, through all the principal streets of MOSCO. The ship required above forty horses to draw it. In order to its passing under the gates, the top-masts were struck; and, when passed, set up again; besides which, the gate-way was dug as low as was necessary for admitting it to pass.

These festivals being ended, his Imperial Majesty prepared to undertake an expedition into PERSIA, at the earnest request of SHACH HUSSEIN, the Sophy of PERSIA, in order to assist that prince against the AFFGHANS, his rebellious subjects, who, under the conduct, first, of MYRVAIS, afterwards, of MYR MAHMUT, had not only seized upon the city and strong fortress CHANDAHAR; but also, had possessed themselves of several provinces, on the frontiers, towards INDIA; making frequent incursions towards the capital of ISPAHAN. As I had formerly been at the court of PERSIA, I was engaged by my friend Doctor BLUMENTROST, his Majesty's chief



1722. chief phyfician, to accompany him in that expedition.

Accordingly, about the beginning of May, 1722, all things neceffary being in readinefs, the troops embarked at MOSCO, on board of half-gallies, built for that purpofe, and fell down the river to KOLUMNA; near which town the MOSCO-river falls into the OKA, about ninety verfts from the city of MOSCO. KOLUMNA was the place of rendezvous, and where the troops waited till the arrival of his Imperial Majefty and the Emprefs, his confort, who accompanied him in this expedition.

May 13th, their Majefties, and all thofe of the court who were appointed to attend them in this expedition, fet out from MOSCO by land, and arrived the next day at KOLUMNA.

The 15th, his Majefty employed himfelf in reviewing the troops, in infpecting the condition of the fleet, and in giving the neceffary orders. The fleet confifted of about three hundred fail of veffels, of all forts, on board of which were about fifteen thoufand regular troops, including half the guards.

The 16th, in the evening, his Majefty and the Emprefs, attended by a few ladies, went on board a magnificent galley, of forty oars, with all proper accommodations, built on purpofe for the voyage.

The



The 17th, at break of day, the signal was given, by <sup>1722.</sup> firing three great guns from his Majesty's galley, for the fleet to get under sail. The galley led the way, and all the rest of the fleet followed in a line. His Majesty's galley carried the standard of RUSSIA, the other vessels their ensigns displayed, with drums beating, and music playing; which altogether made an appearance, perhaps, not to be equalled in any other country. In about an hour's time we came into the river OKA, where the vessels had more room to spread.

Having, in my former journey to PERSIA, mentioned the several places from hence to ASTRACHAN, I need not repeat them here.

I have formerly noted, that, at this season of the year, the rivers of these parts may, in some measure, be compared to the NILE; for, from the melting of the snow, they overflow all the flat grounds adjacent to a very great distance.

The 21st, some of our people going ashore, to take leave of their friends, did not return on board till late in the evening; which caused our being at some distance behind the fleet; upon which we used our best efforts to regain our station; but, in the night, our pilot falling asleep, the bark drove out of the channel of



1722. the river into a wood. I, being in the cabbin, heard a great noise upon deck, not unusual on such occasions; at last I perceived the vessel to strike against something, when, coming upon deck, I was not a little surprised to see the people climbing up trees; for the bark was jammed in between two birch-trees of very large size. All our endeavours could neither move her backwards nor forwards, until we got people from a neighbouring village, by whose assistance we got her warped off with little damage; which being repaired, we proceeded again on our voyage.

The 25th, we came up with the fleet at the town NISHNA-NOVOGOROD; where their Majesties and all the court were most sumptuously entertained at the house of Baron STROGONOFF. We staid here some days to take in provisions and other necessaries.

The 30th, being his Majesty's birth-day, the same was solemnized, in the usual manner, by firing guns, &c.

The 31st, his Majesty sailed in his galley for CAZAN, escorted by some of the small gallies, leaving the rest of the fleet under the command of the lord high admiral APRAXIN.

June 5th, we left NISHNA-NOVOGOROD, and, in fine calm weather, proceeded down the VOLGA.

The



The 8th, we arrived at the city of CAZAN; the Emperor had left that place the preceding day. 1722.

The 9th, we again proceeded on our voyage.

The 20th, we arrived at the town of SARATOFF. Nothing very material occurred by the way, in which we were some times detained by strong gales of southerly winds, and by calms, during which we were incommoded by infinite numbers of muskito-flies.

At this place we came up with the Emperor, who had appointed an interview with the Ayuka-Chan, King of the KALMUCKS; the Chan, for that purpose, had his tents pitched on the east banks of the VOLGA, not far from the river.

Next day, his Majesty invited the Ayuka-Chan and his Queen to dinner on board the galley; which, for the accommodation of the royal guests in getting on board, was brought as near the shore as possible, and a gallery made from the shore to the galley for them to walk on.

The Ayuka-Chan came on horseback, attended by two of the princes his sons, and escorted by a troop of about fifty of his officers and great men, all exceedingly well mounted. About twenty yards from the shore the King alighted from his horse, and was received by



1722. a privy-counsellor and an officer of the guards. When the Emperor saw him advancing, he went on shore, saluted him, and, taking him by the hand, conducted him on board the galley; where he introduced him to the Empress, who was seated on the quarter-deck, under a very rich awning.

Soon after the Ayuka-Chan was got on board the galley, the Queen arrived on the shore, in a covered wheel-machine, attended by one of the princesses her daughter, and two ladies, who were also escorted by a troop of horsemen. When she was alighted, the Emperor went on shore to receive her, and, conducting her on board, introduced her to the Empress.

The Ayuka-Chan is an old man, about seventy years of age, yet is hearty and chearful. He is a prince of great wisdom, and prudent conduct, is much respected by all his neighbours for his sincerity and plain-dealing. And I recollect, that, when I was at PEKIN, the Emperor of CHINA made very honourable mention of him. By his long experience, he is very well acquainted with the state of affairs in the east.

The Queen was about fifty years old, of a decent and chearful deportment; the ladies, her attendants, were young; the princess, in particular, hath a fine complexion;



plexion; her hair, a jet-black, which was disposed in 1722. tresses round her shoulders; and she was, in the eyes of the KALMUCKS, a complete beauty. They were all richly dressed in long robes of PERSIAN brocade, with little round caps, on the upper part of their heads, bordered with fable-fur, according to the fashion of the country.

The Emperor intimated to the Ayuka-Chan, that he would be desirous of ten thousand of his troops to accompany him into PERSIA. The King of the KALMUCKS replied, that ten thousand were at the Emperor's service, but that he thought one half of that number would be more than sufficient to answer all his purposes; and immediately gave orders for five thousand to march directly, and join the Emperor at TERKY.

Both the Emperor and Empress were highly pleased with their guests; and, in the evening, dismissed them with suitable presents. The Empress gave the Queen a gold repeating-watch, set with diamonds, which seemed very much to take her fancy, besides some pieces of brocade, and other silks of value.

It is well worth remarking, that this treaty, between two mighty monarchs, was begun, carried on, and concluded, in less space of time than is usually employed,

by



1722. by the plenipotentiaries of our western EUROPEAN monarchs, in taking a dinner.

The 22d, we left SARATOFF, and sailed down the river VOLGA, with a fair wind.

The 23d, in the evening, we came to the town of KAMOSHINKA, where we remained till the next morning.

The 28th, we came to the town of ZARITZINA; and the 30th, to another town called TZORNO-YARR.

July 4th, we arrived at the city of ASTRACHAN. Little remarkable occurred during the voyage. We were some times detained by contrary winds; and, for the most part of the way, were much incommoded by muskitoes, which plagued us much in the day-time, and interrupted our rest during the night.

The 5th, the weather being excessive hot, the Emperor quitted his house in the city, and went to lodge in one of the adjacent vineyards.

The 6th, the dragoons, whom we found encamped on the west bank of the VOLGA, to the number of five thousand, were ordered to march directly to TERKY; there to wait the Emperor's arrival.

The 8th, the lord high admiral APRAXIN arrived with the fleet and troops on board. The next day the  
troops



troops encamped on one of the islands in the neighbourhood. 1722.

During our stay at ASTRACHAN nothing of moment occurred.

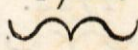
The 16th, all the necessary preparations being completed, the troops re-imbarked, and lay on board that night.

The 17th, the Emperor, Empress, and all the court went on board; and, the wind being fair, sailed down the river; drums beating, and music playing. The fleet was in several divisions, under their respective chiefs; and, being joined by a number of large transports, and other vessels, made a very grand appearance; such as had never been seen before in this part of the world, nor frequently in any other.

The 18th, the wind being contrary, we made but slow progress. In the evening it fell calm; all the shoals being covered with high reeds, contributed to increase the innumerable quantity of muskitoes, with which we were intollerably pestered.

The 19th, we got out of the river VOLGA into the CASPIAN sea. The wind being contrary, the heavy transports were warped out as far as possible, to get out of the reach of those troublesome insects. At night



1722. night we came to an anchor, in eight feet water, near  
 a flat island called TULENY-LAPATA.

The 20th, we continued warping out the whole day. At night we came to an anchor, near the four sandy hillocks called TZATEEREY-BUGGORY.

The 21st, at break of day, the admiral made signal for sailing; the fleet got under sail, and put out to sea, with a fair wind.

The Emperor, accompanied with the half-gallies, on board which were the troops, steered to the west, close under the shore. But I being on board one of the large ships, we kept the sea, and steered a direct course for TERKY. It is to be observed, that the Emperor and the gallies took their course to avoid being liable to be surpris'd with a gale of wind at sea, which might have been attended with bad consequences.

The 22d, we came into salt water, four fathoms deep, out of sight of land, and also of the gallies.

The 23d, we had calms, and easy breezes at N. W.

The 24th, in the evening, we came to an anchor in the road of TERKY.

The 25th, the Emperor and all the gallies arrived safe.

The 26th, the Emperor went ashore; and, having  
visited



visited the town and fortifications, returned on board in the evening. 1722.

The town of TERKY is a frontier strongly situated by nature, being encompassed by a deep marshy ground, having only one entrance to it, on the land-side, which is well-defended by batteries. It takes its name from a small rivulet, running by it, called TERK. It is governed by a commandant, and hath a garrison of about one thousand men, of regular troops and COSSACKS; and is, at all times, well-stored with ammunition and provisions. This place is of singular use for keeping the TZERCASSIAN mountaineers in order, who are well known to be an unruly and restless people. I shall hereafter have occasion to speak more of this nation.

The same day, the Emperor sent an officer to the Aldiggerey, commonly called Shaffkal, to notify his arrival in these parts. The Shaffkal is a prince of considerable authority among the mountaineers, and a friend to the RUSSIANS.

The 27th, the fleet weighed anchor, and sailed, south by east, to the bay of AGRACHAN, so called from a river of that name. In the evening, we anchored in the bay, as near the shore as was judged convenient.

The 28th, the imperial standard was set up on the



1722. shore; all the troops landed and encamped. The same day, a COSSACK arrived in the camp, with dispatches from General VETERANIE, who commanded a body of dragoons, giving an account, that, in his march, he was attacked by a strong party of mountaineers, near the town called ANDREA; that, after a smart dispute, in which several of each side had been killed, and some wounded, he at last dispersed them, and took possession of the town. These people having previously sent all their families and effects to some distance into the mountains, it seems this rash attempt of these mountaineers was premeditated, for the general demanded nothing but a free passage through the country, and engaged to leave them unmolested. The place itself is of no defence, though they had barricaded the streets and avenues leading to it. The poor people felt, to their cost, the effects of attacking regular troops, of which they had never seen any before. However, this was a certain proof of the boldness of these people. Several of them were brought prisoners to the camp; they were strong able-bodied men, fit for any service.

The Emperor, before he left ASTRACHAN, had sent manifestos to all the petty princes and chiefs of DAGGE-

STAN,



STAN, declaring, that he did not come to invade or make war against them; that he only desired a free passage through their territories, and would pay ready money for what provisions, or other necessaries, they might furnish, and that to the full value; to which some of them agreed, others of them did not; such is often the case with free independent states, as are those of the DAGGESTAN.

The 29th and 30th were spent in landing the provisions, artillery, &c. after which the whole army and baggage were transported, on boats and rafts, to the east bank of the river AGRACHAN. This proved a work of labour, there being no woods at hand to make a bridge, nor water enough, at the mouth of the river, to admit our half-gallies, which were designed for the bridge.

The army being transported over, and encamped on the other side of the river, the Emperor made a plan, and ordered a small fortress to be raised; he named it AGRACHAN, from the river on which it was built. This place was intended to keep such stores as we could not conveniently carry along with us; and as a place of retreat in case of unforeseen accidents.

August 2d, the chief named Aldiggercy came to



1722. pay his respects to the Emperor, who gave him a gracious reception; as he did to several other chiefs, of less note, who came in a friendly manner. The Aldiggerey was accompanied by a small troop of his principal officers; most of them were handsome young fellows, very well mounted. After this chief had staid some hours, and settled matters relating to the march, he took his leave.

In the mean time, the soldiers were employed in raising the works of the fortress; and ten thousand COSSACKS arrived from the river DON, all horsemen, under command of KRASNOTZOKIN and other chiefs; and also the five thousand KALMUCKS, sent by the Ayuka-Chan, according to agreement, as formerly mentioned. They were all well mounted, and had many spare horses, which were of great use. They all encamped in the plain towards the mountains.

The troops being now all assembled, we only waited for the carriages which the Aldiggerey had engaged to furnish for the artillery and baggage.

During this interval our great leader, the Emperor, was not idle; but daily on horseback, reviewing the army, which was now increased to more than thirty thousand combatants, including the COSSACKS and KALMUCKS; a  
number



number sufficient to have conquered all PERSIA, had it been intended. Besides the army which were then assembled, the Aldiggerey made a tender to the Emperor of a considerable body of his troops, which the Emperor declined the acceptance of. 1722.

At length about three hundred waggons arrived at the camp, drawn by two oxen each; but, their harnessing not being such as we were used to, we were not a little embarrassed in setting them a-going.

About the middle of August the army was put in motion, and marched, in several columns, from AGRA-CHAN; leaving there a force sufficient to complete the works, and garrison the place. In the evening we encamped at a brook of brackish and muddy water. This day our road lay about equal distance between the sea and the TZERCASSIAN mountains, commonly called DAGGESTAN.

Next morning, we decamped, marched along the valley towards the mountains, and, at night, came to another brook of bad water, where was a little wood of oaks, and plenty of grass, among which I observed great quantities of a certain herb, called ROMAN-WORMWOOD, which the hungry horses devoured very greedily. Next day we found above five hundred of our horses dead in



1722. in the wood and adjacent fields. In our present circumstances, this was no small disaster. The cause was ascribed to their eating the wormwood, which, perhaps, might be the case. We avoided, for the future, as much as possible, the encamping where large quantities of this plant grew.

Yet the dead horses, having been in good case, were not entirely lost, as our KALMUCKS feasted on them for several days. It is to be observed, that these people prefer horse-flesh to beef; and, in all their expeditions, their baggage is very compendious, carrying no other provisions than such a number of spare horses as they think they may want. I was often diverted in seeing these hardy people, round a fire, broiling and eating their horse-steaks, without either bread or salt.

The loss of so many horses detained us some hours later than usual; but, as both the water and grass were bad, we decamped, and, at night, came to a spacious plain opposite to the town of TARKU, where the Aldiggerey resides. Here we found fresh water, and good pasturage.

This place is pleasantly situated in a hollow between two high hills, rising, like an amphitheatre, to within a small distance of the top; having a full view of the



CASPIAN sea. The Prince's house is the uppermost, 1722. and overlooks the whole town; it consists of several apartments, with a spacious hall, after the PERSIAN manner, having a terrass and small garden adjoining.

Next morning, the Aldiggerey came and waited on their Majesties, and invited them to dinner; which was accepted of.

Towards noon, the Princess, spouse to the Aldiggerey, came and paid her respects to the Empress, and gave her Majesty a formal invitation. This lady came in the equipage of the country, that is, in a covered waggon, drawn by a yoke of oxen, with a few footmen to attend her, and escorted by a small party of horse. The lady, though something advanced in years, had still the remains of an handsome person. She had along with her, in the waggon, a young lady, her daughter, who was so pretty that she would have been deemed a beauty in any part of EUROPE. When they entered the Empress' tent, her Majesty stood up to receive them; they then took off their vails, and behaved with great decency. They were richly dressed after the PERSIAN fashion. After they had drank a dish of coffee, they took leave, and returned to the town.

Soon after their departure, the Emperor and Empress



1722. p<sup>re</sup>fs went to the town to dine. The Emperor went on horseback, the Emp<sup>re</sup>ss in her coach, attended by some of the court-ladies, and escorted by a battalion of the guards. The street was so narrow, and, near the palace, so steep, that the coach and six horses could not proceed quite to the palace; which, when her Majesty perceived, she alighted from the coach, and walked the rest of the way on foot. The Emperor was much pleased with the romantic situation of the place. In the evening they returned to the camp.

August 22d, the army marched from SHAFKAL. The day being exceeding hot, no water to be found on the road, together with a continued cloud of dust, to that degree that we could scarcely know one another, made this day's march very disagreeable and fatiguing to all, more especially to the heavy-armed troops, and the cattle. Notwithstanding these inconveniencies, the Emperor kept on horseback the whole day, and took his share of whatever happened. At night, we came to some wells of fresh water, where the army encamped; but there was hardly water enough for the people to drink, which obliged us to send the horses and cattle to a brook at some distance, and a strong party of



of COSSACKS to guard them, least the enemy should attempt to carry them off. 1722.

The next day, we halted at the wells. The Emperor having received intelligence, that a certain chieftain of the mountaineers, named USSMEY, was assembling some troops in order to harrafs us in our march, which lay through some hollow grounds; accordingly, towards noon, we perceived a number of horse and foot, on the tops of the neighbouring hills, about three ENGLISH miles distance from the camp; after they had reconnoitred our disposition for some time, about one half of them, composed of horse and foot, came down into the plain, with intent to drive off some of our cattle, which brought on a skirmish between our irregular troops and the mountaineers, wherein several were wounded, and some were killed, on each side. Our people took many of their foot, and of such as had been dismounted, prisoners. During the action our infantry kept close in the camp. The Emperor rode out to the field; he ordered the dragoons to march, and support the irregulars; on their advancing, the enemy soon dispersed themselves, and fled to the hills, where a considerable number had remained firm on the heights. The carrying off some cattle is supposed



1722. to have been their principal aim, as it would not have been less than downright madness in them to have expected to gain any advantage by attacking such an army of veteran troops, well provided, and well conducted.

In the mean time, our dragoons and irregulars were in pursuit of the enemy, on the other side of the first ridge of hills, and quite out of sight. The Emperor, being apprehensive of an ambush, and of a large body of mountaineers being lodged on the other side of the hills, about three o'clock afternoon, ordered the army to decamp, and march towards the mountains; which was performed in six columns. The Emperor had hourly intelligence of the proceedings of the dragoons and irregulars, who, at length entirely dispersed the enemy, and had taken possession of the town where the Prince USSMEY resided. However, it being then too late to return to our former camp, the army encamped, that night, on a plain between the hills, on the banks of a small rivulet, where we had but indifferent quarters, as there was no more time than to set up the Emperor's tent, and a few others.

The next day, the army decamped, and marched back to our former camp at the wells; leaving the dragoons



goons and irregulars to manage the rest of the business, who made the DAGGESTANS, particularly the USS-MEY and his people, pay dear for their rash attempt of endeavouring to interrupt the march of an army so far superior to any force they could muster. We staid here two days, waiting for the return of our dragoons and irregulars. 1722.

The 27th, the troops being all re-assembled, the Emperor decamped, and marched again to the south-eastward, towards DERBENT, through a dry parched plain. At night, we came to a brook, near the foot of the hills, where we encamped, not having seen any enemy that day.

The 28th, we marched again; and, passing a defile, or hollow way, with some difficulty and delay to the carriages, at night, we came to wells of brackish water, where we set up our tents, at no great distance from the hills, the sea being about a mile from us to the left hand.

The 29th, being within a short march of the city of DERBENT, the Emperor halted to give the troops time to put themselves in order for an entry into the town, as it is the frontier belonging to the Shach of PERSIA.

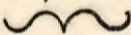


1722. Near our camp there are several pits flowing with that bituminous liquid called naphtha. The naphtha here is of a blackish colour, very inflammable; it is used by the PERSIANS to burn in their lamps, and not easily extinguished by rain; but, as I have formerly spoken of this kind of petroleum, I do not enlarge on that subject here.

The 30th, the army set forwards, the Emperor being on horseback at the head of his troops, which made a fine appearance. At the distance of about three ENGLISH miles from DERBENT, the governor of that place, attended by his officers of distinction, and the magistrates of the town, came, in a body, to wait on the Emperor, and to present him with the golden keys of the town and of the citadel; which they did on a cushion covered with very rich PERSIAN brocade; the governor, and all his attendants, kneeling during this short ceremony. The Emperor received these gentlemen very graciously, and gave them signal marks of his favour. They accompanied him to the city, where, being arrived, the army halted some time; during which, guards were placed at the gates, and a garrison in the citadel, under the command of Colonel YUN-

GER,



GER, with a supply of cannon and ammunition, both <sup>1722.</sup> which were much wanting in the place. 

The foregoing being completed, the Emperor, at the head of his army, marched through the city, and encamped among the vineyards, about an ENGLISH mile to the south-eastward of the town, and about half a mile from the sea-shore.

Soon after which the Emperor, accompanied by all the general officers, returned again to the city, and examined the condition of the fortifications. On this occasion the PERSIAN governor made his Majesty an offer of his house, and quarters for as many of the troops as the place could accommodate; but, to avoid putting the inhabitants to any inconveniency, or perhaps for other reasons, the Emperor declined accepting the offer of lodging in the city; and, at night, returned to his camp.

In this situation we continued some days; and were making the needful preparations for advancing farther into the country, as soon as the transports with provisions, stores, &c. from ASTRACHAN, which were daily expected, should arrive.

They did arrive in safety; but a most unfortunate accident happened; the night following, after their arrival,



1722. rival, a violent storm of wind, from the north east, drove the greatest part of them ashore, where they were wrecked and dashed to pieces; but, by good providence, not many lives were lost.

This misfortune disconcerted his Majesty's measures, and put a stop to the further progress of his arms for the present; having nothing before him but a country exhausted of all necessaries; and the season of the year being too far spent to wait a fresh supply from ASTRACHAN, the Emperor determined to leave things in the same state they then were in, and to return again to ASTRACHAN, by the same way we came, leaving a garrison at DERBENT sufficient to secure the advantages he had gained.

Before I leave DERBENT I shall endeavour to give a short description of the place. It is said to have been first built and fortified, according to the style of the fortifications of that age, by ALEXANDER the Great; though it is not easy to ascertain that tradition, or the aera of its first construction; yet, by variety of circumstances, it appears to be very ancient.

The present citadel, walls, and gates seem to be of EUROPEAN architecture, and no mean performance.

The citadel stands on the highest ground of the city  
towards



towards the land-side. The walls of the city are built of large blocks of square stone, they reach into the sea, beyond which many huge rocks are tumbled into the sea, to prevent any approach, or passage, on that side. The haven is now so choaked up with sand, that there is hardly entry for a small boat.

DERBENT may be called the key to the PERSIAN empire on this side; and serves to keep the mountaineers, and other neighbours, on that side, in awe. The situation is very pleasant, rising gradually from the sea to the top of the hill, commanding a very extensive prospect, especially towards the south-east. About thirty miles due south stands one of the highest mountains in PERSIA, called SHACH-DAGH, which is always covered with snow. To the eastward of the town are many large vineyards, producing plenty of grapes, of which they make a considerable quantity of both white and red wine, of strength sufficient to preserve it round the year, and longer if required. The people of substance there keep their wine in jars, buried underground, by which method it will keep good for years.

They have also fruitful plains in the neighbourhood; and, at some distance, is a large forest of walnut-trees, oaks, &c. As this place is a frontier of great impor-



1722. importance, the Sophy of PERSIA always appoints a person of distinction for its governor.

His Majesty having placed a sufficient garrison in DERBENT, which he left there under the command of Colonel YUNGER, upon September the 18th the whole army marched back through the town, keeping the same route by which we came. Little of moment occurred on our march, though we were almost daily alarmed by small parties of the DAGGESTANS, who frequently made their appearance on the tops of the hills, but fled always at the approach of our COSSACKS. As we had seen no rain since our landing on this coast, our people suffered not a little from the great heats, continual clouds of dust, and want of water.

On the 29th of September, after a most fatiguing march, their Majesties and all the army arrived, in safety, at the fort of AGRACHAN, and found the fleet in the bay where we left them.

October the 1st, we began to ship off the baggage, and what artillery, &c. was not wanted at the fort of AGRACHAN; in which place the Emperor left a sufficient garrison.

I shall now endeavour to give the reader a short view of the country commonly called TZERCASSIA, or DAG-



GESTAN by the inhabitants of the country, from *dagb*, 1722. which signifies a mountain in their language. The country so called is situated between the EUXINE, or BLACK sea, and the CASPIAN sea; these two seas confine it from N. W. to S. E. Southward it reaches to the province of GURGISTAN, commonly called GEORGIA. It stretches northward into a part of the STEPP, or desert, which lies between ASOPH and ASTRACHAN.

The country is divided into several free independent principalities, as KABERDA, SHAFFKAL, USSMEY, and many others, under their respective chieftains, who are at first elected by the people; and though that office is sometimes known to continue in the family of the person elected for several generations, yet it hath frequently happened, that, either through male-administration, or in consequence of wars among those different states, a chieftain with his family have been deposed, or banished, and another appointed in his place. It hath also been known that the Sophy of PERSIA hath placed and displaced some of those princes among the DAGGESTANS, who lye the most contiguous to PERSIA. Both the Sophy and the OTTOMAN PORTE lay claim to the sovereignty of DAGGESTAN; but, of late years, these people, trusting to their own valour



1722. and the natural strength of the country, pay little regard to either of these mighty monarchs, who sometimes threaten them, at other times court their friendship.

The whole extent of the country is hilly, with some mountains of great height; yet, I am informed, they have fruitful vallies, producing corn, vines, and fruits, natural to the climate. Besides a breed of excellent saddle-horses, they have great store of cattle, particularly of sheep, which produce the finest wool I have seen in any part. Whether the famous golden fleece was the produce of these parts, or not, I shall leave to others to determine.

The men are, for the most part, well made, and stout; many of them are employed in the service of the Sophy, and frequently raised to high stations. The Et-madowlett, or prime minister, ALY-BEGG, was a native of this country. As to their women, they are esteemed to be the most beautiful of any in ASIA, as well for features and complexion, as also for fine shape; on which account many of these poor girls are purchased, at high rates, or stolen away, for the use of the seraglios at ISPAHAN, CONSTANTINOPLE, and other eastern courts.

The religion of the DAGGESTANS is generally MAHO-

METAN;



METAN; some following the sect of OSMAN, others that of HALY. Some of those people are CHRISTIANS of the eastern or GREEK church. Their language, for the most part, is TURKISH, or rather a dialect of the ARABIC, though many of them speak also the PERSIAN language. 1722.

One article I cannot omit concerning their laws of hospitality, which is, if their greatest enemy comes under their roof for protection, the landlord, of what condition soever, is obliged to keep him safe, from all manner of harm or violence, during his abode with him, and even to conduct him safely, through his territories, to a place of security. With which I conclude what I have to say of the DAGGESTANS.

On the 5th of October, his Majesty and the Empress went on board their galley, the fleet being ready, and all the troops embarked.

Before I quit AGRACHAN, I am desirous of bringing the reader, in some measure, acquainted with the character of the magnanimous commander of this expedition, during which I had daily frequent opportunities of seeing that great man PETER the First; and, during the whole time, was in company, and conversed, with those people who had attended his person for



1722. very many years; several of whom possessed, in some degree, his favour, and were well-regarded by him. Therefore, I hope, what I am about to offer, concerning this great monarch, will not be unacceptable to the candid reader; whose taking in good part what I shall say, I have some right to expect; for I shall say nothing of fact, but what is true; nor any thing of opinion, but what is sincere.

Several foreign writers have misrepresented and traduced the real character of PETER the Great, by relating mean stories, picked up at alehouses, and circulated among the lowest class of people, most of them without the least ground of truth; whereby many people of good understanding have been misled, and, even to this present time, look on him to have been a vicious man, and a cruel tyrant; than which nothing can be more the reverse of his true character.

Though he might have had some failings, yet it is well known, to many living at the time of my writing this, which is above thirty-seven years after his demise, that his prudence, justice, and humanity very much over-balanced his failings; which principally, if not solely, arose from his inclination to the fair sex.

I shall here take the liberty to insert a passage or



two, which, though trifling, yet as so great a personage is the subject, will not (I trust) be altogether unacceptable or unentertaining to the reader, as they are instances of his assiduity. 1722.

About the middle of October, 1714, I arrived at CRONSTADT in an ENGLISH ship. The Czar, having notice of the ship's arrival, came on board, the next morning, from ST. PETERSBURG; being attended only by Dr. ARESKINE, who was his chief physician at that time, and, on that occasion, served him as interpreter. After his Majesty had enquired news about the SWEDISH fleet, &c. he eat a piece of bread and cheese, and drank a glass of ale, then went on shore to visit the works carrying on at CRONSTADT; and returned, the same evening, in his boat, to ST. PETERSBURG, distance about twenty ENGLISH miles.

The first winter after my arrival at ST. PETERSBURG, I lodged at Mr. NOY's, an ENGLISH ship-builder in the Czar's service. One morning, before day-light, my servant came and told me that the Czar was at the door. I got up, and saw him walking up and down the yard, the weather being severely cold and frosty, without any one to attend him. Mr. NOY soon came, and took him into the parlour, where his Majesty gave him some parti-



1722. particular directions about a ship then on the stocks;  
which having done, he left him.

His Majesty's person was graceful, tall, and well-made; clean, and very plain in his apparel. He generally wore an ENGLISH drab-colour cloth-frock, never appearing in a dress-suit of cloaths, unless on great festivals, and remarkable holidays; on which occasions he was some times dressed in laced cloaths, of which sort he was not owner of above three or four suits. When he was dressed, he wore the order of ST. ANDREW; at other times, he had no badge, or mark, of any order, on his person. His equipage was simple, without attendants. In summer, a four-oared wherry was always attending, to carry him over the river, if he should want to cross it, which he frequently did. When he went about the town, by land, he always made use of an open two-wheeled chaise, attended by two soldiers, or grooms, who rode before, and a page, who some times stood behind the chaise, and often sat in it with his Majesty, and drove him. In winter, he made use of a sledge, drawn by one horse, with the same attendants. He found these to be the most expeditious ways of conveyance, and used no other. He was abroad every day in the year, unless confined at home by illness,  
which



which rarely happened; so that seldom a day passed but he was seen in almost every part of the city. 1722.



I have more than once seen him stop, in the streets, to receive petitions from persons who thought themselves wronged by sentences passed in courts of judicature. On taking the petition, the person was told to come next day to the senate; where the affair was immediately examined, and determined, if the nature of it would admit its being done in so short a time. It will naturally follow, that such free access to his person, was not only productive of great relief to many poor widows and orphans, but also a strong check upon judges; and tended very much to prevent any sort of influence prevailing on them to pronounce unjust sentences, for which they were so likely to be called to account.

His Majesty might truly be called a man of business; for he could dispatch more affairs in a morning, than an houseful of senators could do in a month. He rose almost every morning in the winter-time, before four o'clock, was often in his cabinet by three o'clock, where two private secretaries, and certain clerks, paid constant attendance. He often went so early to the senate, as to occasion the senators being raised out of their



1722. their beds to attend him there. When assembled, after hearing causes between subject and subject, or public affairs, regarding the interior of the empire, read by the secretary, and the opinion of the senate recited thereupon, he would write upon the process, or upon the affair, under deliberation, with his own hand, in a very laconic style, "Let it be according to the decree of the senate;" and some times would add some particular alterations, such as he thought fit to mention, and under-wrote P E T E R.

His Majesty knew so little of relaxation of mind when awake, that he never allowed his time of rest to be broke in upon, unless in case of fire. When any accident of that kind happened, in any part of the town, there was a standing order to awake him on its first appearance; and his Majesty was frequently the first at the fire, where he always remained, giving the necessary orders, till all further danger was over. This example of paternal regard of the Czar for his subjects was, of course, followed by all the great officers, and those of the first quality; which was frequently the means of saving many thousands of his subjects from utter ruin, whose houses and goods, without such singular



gular assistance, must have shared the fate of their ruined neighbours.

1722.

In acts of religion he appeared devout, but not superstitious. I have seen him at his publick devotions in church many times. I have been present, when his Majesty, not liking the clerk's manner of reading the psalms, hath taken the book from the clerk, and hath read them himself; which he did very distinctly, and with proper emphasis. His Majesty was allowed, by the best judges of the SCLAVONIAN and RUSSIAN languages, to be as great a master of them, as any the most learned of his subjects, whether churchmen or laics. He wrote a very good hand, very expeditiously, yet the characters distinct enough; of this I myself am some judge, having seen many of his letters, all wrote with his own hand, to Mr. HENRY STILES, and others. As to his style, some of his secretaries, and other competent judges of the language, affirmed, that they had never known any man who wrote more correctly, or could comprise the sense and meaning of what he wrote in so few words, as his Majesty.

The following I had from a certain RUSS gentleman, of very good family, and who was a general officer of unexceptionable character in the army, who



1722. had attended his Majesty, from his very youth, in all his expeditions. This officer being an old friend of mine, I went to pay him a visit one evening, long after the death of PETER the great; when he told me, that such and such old officers, naming them, had dined with him that day, and that the principal subject of their conversation turned on the actions of their old father, (as he termed him, by way of eminence,) PETER the great. He told me further, that though his Majesty seemed to be severe, on certain occasions, yet not one of them all could produce or recollect one single instance of his having punished an honest man; or, that he had caused any person to suffer any punishment who had not well deserved it.

He hath been represented as making too frequent use of spirituous liquors to excess, which is an unmerited aspersión; for he had an aversion to all fots, and to those too much given to drink. It is true, he had his times of diversion, when he would be merry himself, and liked to see others so; this may have been necessary, and proper for the unbending his mind from affairs of great weight; but such amusements occurred generally during holidays, and festival times, and was, with him, at no time of long continuance. It hath been



1722.

been imputed to him, and not without some appearance of reason, that he had political views in encouraging drinking at these times of merriment; for, on these occasions, he mixed with the company, and, conversing with them on the footing of a companion, had better opportunities, at such times, of discovering the real sentiments of those about him, than when they were quite cool.

Those, who by their offices about the person of PETER the great, might be supposed to be the best acquainted with his disposition, always disavowed his drinking to excess; and insisted on his being a sober Prince. I can aver, that, during the campaign of the expedition to DERBENT in PERSIA, he was not once guilty of the least excess; but rather lived abstemiously. In this point I could not be mistaken, as the tent of DR. BLUMENTROST, his Majesty's chief physician, with whom I lodged, was always the nearest tent to that of his Majesty.

I shall give one instance in proof of what I have advanced, concerning the temperance of this great man, viz. In our third day's-march, on our return from DERBENT, we were kept in continual alarm by considerable bodies of mountaineers, both horse and



1722. foot, whom we saw hovering on the tops of the adjacent hills; though they dared not to come down to the plain, to attack any part of our army, yet it was necessary to be watchful of them; which, in some measure, impeded our march. The evening of that day, we had a hollow way to pass, which took up much time, and obliged the greatest part of the army to remain there all night; so that none reached the camp, except the guards, and some light horse who attended their Majesties. On my arrival there, about midnight, I found only his Majesty's tent set up, and another small one for Mr. FELTON, the Czar's principal cook, and master of his kitchen. I went into FELTON's tent, and found him all alone, with a large sauce-pan of warm grout before him, made of buck-wheat with butter; which, he told me, was the remains of their Majesties supper, who eat of nothing else that evening; and who were just gone to bed.

During the whole march, his Majesty, for the most part, rode an ENGLISH pad, about fourteen hands high; for which he had a particular liking, as it was very tractable and easy to mount. His picture is drawn by CARAVAC on this horse. He did not wear boots, as he very often walked on foot. In the heat of the day, when



when the army halted, he used to go into the Empress' coach, and sleep for half an hour. His dress, during the march, was a white night-cap, with a plain flapped hat over it, and a short dimitty waistcoat. When at any time he received messengers, from the chieftains of the mountaineers, he put on his regimentals, as an officer of the guards, being lieutenant colonel of the PREOBRASHENSKY regiment. 1722.

During the whole course of his life, his Majesty avoided all sorts of ceremony, except on publick occasions. His manner of living, in his house, was more like that of a private gentleman, than of so great a monarch. I was once at court on a holiday, when the Emperor came home from church to dinner, with a large attendance of his ministers, general officers, and other great men. His table was laid with about fifteen covers. As soon as dinner was served up, he and the Empress took their places; and his Majesty, addressing himself to the company, said, Gentlemen, please to take your places as far as the table will hold, the rest will go home and dine with their wives.

On such occasions, the princesses, his children, dined in another room, to whom he sent such dishes, from his own table, as he thought proper, for their dinner.

This



1722.

~ This great monarch took all the pains, and used all the means possible, in order to be intimately acquainted with every thing proper for a man, who ruled a mighty empire, to know. He entered into the detail of every branch of the arts useful to mankind; into that of all the manufactures which regarded the construction of ships, and fitting them for the sea; into that of the making of arms, artillery, &c. If he had a ruling passion for any one part of these acquirements, it must have been for ship-building; into which he entered himself very early, in the quality of a common workman, with his hatchet, and proceeded regularly through all the degrees, to the rank of master-builder, which he attained but a few years before his death. After he got that length in the art, he made the draughts, formed the mouldings, and directed the building of several men of war, of the second and third rates, himself; and he duly demanded, and received his salary as a master-builder. The day of launching the ships, which he himself built, he celebrated as a holiday, and put on laced clothes; but before he went to work, to strike away the stanchions, blocks, &c. he always put off his fine coat.

He was very frugal in what regarded his personal expences,



1722.

expences, and those of his household. Notwithstanding his frugality, in what related to himself, he spared no cost, in whatever concerned the publick, in the structure of his men of war, in the artillery, fortifications, arsenals, canals, &c. all which bore marks of very great magnificence. Nor was he sparing in his buildings, and the decorations of his gardens with statues, grottos, fountains, &c. of which the buildings of the summer-palace, and the gardens at ST. PETERSBURG, at PETERHOFF, STREALNA, CZARSKY SEALO, and many others, are sufficient proofs. I shall not detain the reader longer, on the subject of this very great man's character, or way of living, than to acquaint him, that, as his Majesty was very early up in the morning, he went abroad generally without breakfast; came home to dinner about eleven of the clock; after dinner, went to sleep for about an hour; after which, if business did not intervene, he sometimes diverted himself at his turning loom; then went to visit those he had a regard for, as well foreigners as RUSSIANS, with whom he would be very sociable, and easy in conversation. He sometimes supped with them; which, generally in his latter days, was on hare or wild-fowl, roasted very dry, drank small beer, and sometimes a few glasses of wine; and



1722. and generally was in bed before ten of the clock at night. He neither played at cards, dice, or any game of chance.

The reader will please to take along with him the following observation, viz. That this monarch was at no time, even during masquerades, feastings, assemblies, and all other diversions or amusements, by day or night, without the attendance of some or other of his ministers, and of those who possessed his confidence; by which means business, and such affairs as were of the greatest consequence, went on regularly; and some of them even concerted during those times of relaxation.

I now return to the 5th of October, 1722; at which time, the Emperor and Empress being embarked on board their galley, and the whole fleet being ready, and the wind fair, we weighed anchor, and got under sail, from the bay of AGRACHAN, for ASTRACHAN, at which place we arrived on the 14th of the same month, little material happening in the passage, only some rough gales of contrary wind.

Having finished what I had to do at ASTRACHAN, I joined company with SIMON GREGORITZ NARISHKIN, one of his Majesty's General-adjutants, and Commodore



GOSSLAR, who always commanded the ship in which his Majesty hoisted his flag, when he went to sea; and with those two gentlemen returned to MOSCO. 1722.

Accordingly, we set out from ASTRACHAN in a small shallop, and came, by water, to the town of ZARITZINA. The winter approaching, we got such carriages as the place afforded, and continued our journey, along the lines, to the river DON; these lines are drawn from the VOLGA to the DON, being a deep ditch, about thirty feet broad, pallisadoed on the top, with high wooden towers, at certain distances, in sight of each other, well guarded. They effectually answer the end proposed, by his Majesty, in erecting them, and making the ditch; which was for the preventing of incursions from the CUBAN TARTARS.

The 25th of November we arrived in MOSCO; at which place his Majesty and the Empress arrived about the middle of December, 1722.



The following are the post-stages, and distances, between MOSCO and ASTRACHAN.

|                   |                       | Versts. |
|-------------------|-----------------------|---------|
| From              | Mosco                 |         |
| to the village of | Ostroffsach           | 25      |
|                   | Ulianinin Sealo       | 38      |
| Town of           | Kolumna               | 32      |
| of                | Zaraysky              | 39      |
|                   | Prudach Sealo         | 37      |
|                   | Pod Oflinka           | 35      |
|                   | Bogoyavlensko         | 35      |
|                   | Gorlovy               | 25      |
| Town of           | Skopina               | 30      |
| Town of           | Reasky                | 40      |
| Village of        | Blagoy                | 37      |
|                   | Oloviach              | 35      |
| Town of           | Kozloff               | 32      |
|                   | Retzky Yaroslafky     | 25      |
|                   | Lysslach-Gorach Sealo | 22      |
| Town of           | Tamboff               | 22      |
|                   | Kufminoy Gatty Sealo  | 21      |
|                   | To be carried over    | 530     |



|      |                         | Versts. |
|------|-------------------------|---------|
|      | Brought over            | 530     |
| From | Retzky-Tziny            | 27      |
| to   | Panoffskich Kufstack    | 24      |
|      | Retzky-Savally          | 20      |
|      | Retzky-Shinkoffy        | 20      |
|      | Retzky-Tagaiky          | 26      |
|      | Retzky-Tavolshanky      | 20      |
|      | Chaperskoy Krepost      | 22      |
|      | Michailofsky Gorodky    | 27      |
|      | Yuripinsky Stanu        | 17      |
|      | Tepinsky-Yurtu          | 20      |
|      | Pravotorskoy-Yurtu      | 20      |
|      | Kalinofsky Kustiky      | 24      |
|      | Zatofsky-Yurtu          | 21      |
|      | Kulmishkom-Yurtu        | 24      |
|      | Ust-Chaperskoy Koluditz | 21      |
|      | Rofsleeve               | 12      |
|      | Ust-Medvedesky          | 13      |
|      | Kletzkoy-Tzaganock      | 18      |
|      | Klementskey Stantzy     | 23      |
|      | Novo Gregoriofsky       | 20      |
|      | Siropensky Stantzy      | 23      |
|      | To be carried over      | 972     |



|                                                                         | Versts. |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Brought over                                                            | 972     |
| From Retzky-Sokary                                                      | 30      |
| to Gratsfeský Stantzy                                                   | 12      |
| Town of Zaritina                                                        | 28      |
| Reka-Actuba                                                             | 26      |
| Tzareofa-Puda                                                           | 31      |
| Urotzilha-Tzareva                                                       | 30      |
| Tayunley                                                                | 26      |
| Kulava                                                                  | 30      |
| Ahlagatay                                                               | 30      |
| Sakuley                                                                 | 30      |
| Okoreba                                                                 | 25      |
| Befstzara                                                               | 26      |
| Kravala                                                                 | 30      |
| Achfarava                                                               | 27      |
| Reka-Bolshoy Bereketa                                                   | 20      |
| Astrachan                                                               | 39      |
| The distance from MOSCO to ASTRA-<br>CHAN, the post-road, by land - - - | 1412    |



AN  
A C C O U N T  
OF MY  
J O U R N E Y  
FROM  
ST. P E T E R S B U R G  
T O

CONSTANTINOPLE,

AND THENCE

BACK TO ST. PETERSBURG,

IN PART OF THE YEARS M.DCC.XXXVII. AND M.DCC.XXXVIII.

UNDERTAKEN AT THE INSTANCES OF

C O U N T O S T E R M A N,

CHANCELLOR OF RUSSIA,

AND OF

M R. R O N D E A U,

MINISTER FROM GREAT BRITAIN AT

THE COURT OF ST. PETERSBURG.







## A C C O U N T

1737.

OF MY

J O U R N E Y

T O

C O N S T A N T I N O P L E.

A WAR having broken out, in 1734, between RUSSIA and TURKEY, which had been carried on with great success on the part of RUSSIA, by their taking from the TURKS the strongly fortified cities of ASOPH, OTZAKOFF, together with the PERECOP, and other places of the frontiers of great importance, the Emperor of GERMANY, through various connections, came, some time after its commencement, to be engaged in it.

In the autumn of 1737 a congress was appointed to be held at NEMIROFF, a town on the frontiers of POLAND, in order to accommodate and determine all differences, between the belligerent powers, by the mediation of the ministers of GREAT BRITAIN, FRANCE, and the States of HOLLAND, then residing at the OTTOMAN

PORTE,



1737. PORTE, who were Sir EVERARD FAWKNER, the Marquis de VILLE-NEUVE, and Mr. KALKUNE. But, before these ministers could reach NEMIROFF, the plenipotentiaries of the powers at war differed so widely, in their respective demands, that the congress broke up without effect.

The court of RUSSIA determining to send a person to CONSTANTINOPLE, with new proposals of accommodation, and as no subjects of RUSSIA or GERMANY are admitted into the dominions of the Grand Seigneur, whilst he is at war with those powers, I was prevailed upon to undertake the journey, at the earnest desires of Count OSTERMAN, the chancellor of RUSSIA, and of Mr. RONDEAU, at that time his BRITANNIC Majesty's minister at the court of ST. PETERSBURG.

On the 6th of December, 1737, I set out from ST. PETERSBURG, with only one servant, who understood the TURKISH language. Having, in a former journey, taken notice of the places on the road between ST. PETERSBURG and MOSCO, I wave the repeating them.

The 9th, I arrived at the city of MOSCO; which had greatly suffered, the preceding summer, by a dreadful conflagration. As I purpose, at the end of my journey, to give an account of the stages and distances, I shall



shall here only mention the time, and chief places through which I pass. 1737.

The 11th, I left MOSCO, early in the morning, and proceeded to the south-west towards KIOFF.

The 12th, in the night, I came to KALUGA, a large and populous town, situated on the banks of the river OCKA, inhabited by several substantial merchants, very considerable dealers in hemp, pot-ash, wax, &c.

The 15th, I got to SIESKY, another town, which is reckoned to be at about equal distance from MOSCO, and from KIOFF, and is the last town in GREAT RUSSIA, bordering on the RUSSIAN UKRAIN. At night I reached GLUKOVA, the first town in the UKRAIN, a large and populous place; where having changed horses, I proceeded thence the same night to another town called KOROLEVITZ.

The 16th, I passed through BATTURIN, a large rambling town, formerly the residence of the Hetman MAZEPPA; it stands on rising hills upon the river SEMM. The country adjacent is very pleasant, and exceeding fruitful, being mostly plain, interspersed with woods of oak, and other timber. The place is almost encompassed with cherry and other fruit trees. What is remarkable, and demonstrative of the great fertility



1737. of the foil, is, that they have about sixty water-mills, for grinding corn, all built within the distance of two ENGLISH miles.

At night, I got to NESHIN, another considerable town. At this place, for want of snow on the ground, I was obliged to leave my convenient sledge, and ride all the rest of the way on horseback. This detained me much longer on the road than I should have been, if I could have proceeded in my sledge.

The 18th, I passed the BORYSTHENES in a boat; and, in the evening, arrived at KIOFF, situated on the west bank of the BORYSTHENES, now called DNIEPER. This famous river takes its rise on the borders of POLAND, near the city of SMOLENSKO, and, after a long course pointing to the south, discharges itself into the BLACK sea, near OTZAKOFF.

The city of KIOFF stands on a high hill, and overlooks the river, and a spacious plain to the eastward, as far as your eye can reach. To the westward, the country is hilly; and many of the hills are covered with woods. There are several vine-yards about the town, which produce good grapes for the table.

This place is adorned with many magnificent churches; and is famous for being the repository of saints, and holy



holy men of the GREEK church, whose shrines are visited by devout persons from distant places. Besides, <sup>1737.</sup> they have an university at KIOFF, of considerable repute in these parts.

I cannot but observe here, that this part of the country, commonly called the UKRAIN, (though it is sometimes called LITTLE RUSSIA,) doth, for fertility of soil and rich pasturage, exceed most parts of EUROPE; producing vast quantities of various sorts of grain, the crops of which are always very great, as well as of hemp and flax, of the most excellent quality, and that with little labour; for they plow the ground with one horse only, and with but one man, who holds the plow and drives the horse at the same time.

The UKRAIN produces good horses for the saddle, and large sized black-cattle, in very great numbers, more than sufficient for their own use, and for supplying their neighbours, with as good beef as the world affords. The woods are well stored with game of diverse sorts; as are the rivers and ponds with fish. Asparagus, which in other parts requires cultivation, grows naturally, in such plenty, in the UKRAIN, as to be termed a weed. The people are very civil and hospitable among themselves, and also to all strangers, living very



1737. clean and neat in their houses. I now resume my  
journey.

At KIOFF I met with my worthy friends General ROMANZOFF and the privy counsellor Mr. NEPTUOF, who gave me all the assistance and dispatch I could desire. They ordered a lieutenant, and a troop of cossacks to escort me through POLAND, to the confines of MOLDAVIA.

On the 20th, I set out from KIOFF; and at night came to the frontier town, called VASSILKOFF, which stands on the declivity of a hill, and is the last town belonging to RUSSIA in that part. The place is but small, though well fortified, and provided with a strong garrison, &c.

The 21st, early in the morning, I left VASSILKOFF, accompanied by my trusty cossacks; and, after riding about an hour, I came to the borders of POLAND, where is an out-post, and a strong guard of RUSSIAN soldiers. This place is called the ZASTAVE, very necessary in time of war. The territory of POLAND is divided here, from that of RUSSIA, by a deep ditch drawn a-cross the middle of a spacious plain.

From the ZASTAVE I continued my journey, in a strong frost, which made the road very rough; and  
keeping



keeping to the southward, along the same plain, I saw 1737. neither house nor tree, till I came to BELOZERKOFF, the first town appertaining to POLAND in this part. The gates being shut, before my arrival, it was sometime before I could be admitted. However, at length, the gates were opened; I took up my quarters at a publick house belonging to a JEW. The same evening I waited on Mr. BECHERSKY, the governor, and desired he would give me a passport. He treated me with great civility, and ordered the passport to be ready against the next morning.

The 22d, by the excess of the governor's hospitality, I was detained till the evening, waiting for his excellency's passport; which was absolutely necessary, and proved of great use to me on the road.

The town of BELOZERKOFF, so called from a white church there, is a pretty large place, and is fortified. It stands in a pleasant plain. The inhabitants are, for the most part, POLES, mixed with not a few JEWS, who keep publick houses; and are generally farmers of the revenues all over POLAND. There is scarce a village without some JEWS, who keep inns, for lodging and entertaining passengers.

In the evening, I took my leave of the kind governor,



1737. nor, who, after treating me with great politeness, gave me a guide to the next village, called SHAMARYAFKA, about two POLISH miles distant from BELOZERKOFF, where I lodged that night.

The 23d, early in the morning, I left this village, in a strong frost, without any snow; and, after passing a few straggling villages, at night, I came to GOLOQUAST; where I took up my lodgings at a JEW's house. It is to be observed, that the country is mostly plain, with some rising grounds, interspersed with woods of oak, ash, and elm, and other sorts of timber, but chiefly of oak; is very pleasant and fruitful, but thinly inhabited; which must proceed from their being exposed to the incursions of the TARTARS and HAYDAMACKS, who, at times, make cruel inroads into these parts.

The HAYDAMACKS were, the foregoing winter, at this place, with a body of five or six hundred horse, where they committed many disorders; after which, and after having tortured all the JEWS they could light upon, to oblige them to discover their money, they marched off with their booty, before the POLISH troops could be assembled to oppose them.

I was well informed, by people who knew something of these lawless banditti, who are called HAYDAMACKS

by



1737.

by the POLES, and ZAPOUROSKY COSSACKS by the RUSSIANS, that they are a parcel of vagabonds, composed of idle fellows of different nations, who, having fled from justice, find a safe retreat among this crew. They are, for several reasons, protected by the TURKS, who lay claim to the islands, and places adjacent, on the river DNEPER, where they inhabit; and have fortified themselves so strongly as not easily to be attacked; nor can they be attacked without danger of breaking peace with the TURK.

They profess the CHRISTIAN religion; but have no wives nor any women among them; having erected themselves into a wild kind of military order, if it may be so called. Every person, who is desirous of entering into this community, is obliged to serve a certain number of years, before he is admitted into the brotherhood. The grand master is called Casba-var, which signifies chief cook, who is chosen from among the fraternity, for his conduct and courage. I think I need not enlarge on the subject of such a worthless society.

The 24th, I left GOLOQUAST, and came, towards noon, to a small town, called POGREBISHA, where I halted. The people, at first sight, taking my COSSACKS for HAYDAMACKS, shut the gates, and alarmed the place



1737. place. My passport soon convinced them of their error. After a short stay, I proceeded again on my journey. At night I reached a small village, named OTZEREDNO, where I lodged.

The 25th, leaving OTZEREDNO, I got to VITOFFTZY, another village, where I lay that night.

The 26th, I arrived at NEMIROFF, where the late congress was held, as I have mentioned above. This town is pretty large and populous, well fortified and garrisoned. The governor is General RUSSOTSKY, who hath Colonel WANGENHEIM, and several other GERMAN officers under him.

The country about NEMIROFF is very pleasant and fruitful; having many orchards in the neighbourhood, which produce the largest apples and pears, that I have seen any where. They have also plenty of grapes, very good for the table.

The 27th, about noon, I set out again on my journey. I got that night to the village PETZORY, where I remained that night.

The 28th, I halted at SPIKOFF; travelled thence to LEFKOVITZ, a large village, where I passed the night.

The 29th, I halted at TAMAZ-POLY, and lodged at KLEIMBOFKA.

The



The 30th, I arrived at TZIKANOFKA, the last place <sup>1738.</sup> belonging to POLAND on that frontier. It is a large straggling village, situate on the east bank of the river ISTER, now called DNIESTER, and is the boundary between POLAND and MORAVIA. On the opposite shore stands the town of SOROKA, the first in the principality of MOLDAVIA, now annexed to the TURKISH dominions. The same evening, I sent my man to SOROKA, to acquaint the commandant or Perkulab, as they are called, of my arrival.

Next morning, the 1st of January, 1738, the commandant of SOROKA, whose name is PETROKY, a GREEK, came over upon the ice to visit me, and told me that he was very sorry he could not let me pass without a special order from the Prince of MOLDAVIA, who resides at YASSY, to whom he would immediately dispatch an express for that purpose; and hoped I would wait patiently for an answer. In the evening Mr. PETROKY paid me another visit; he showed me much civility, and brought me a present of wine, fruits, &c. which was very acceptable in a place where little was to be got for money.

January 2d, Mr. PETROKY acquainted me, that his express was returned, with orders, from the Prince, to



1738. furnish me with horses, and a proper convoy, to YASSY.

Having no more occasion for the COSSACKS, I sent them back again to KIOFF; but Mr. NOROFF, the lieutenant, was permitted to accompany me to YASSY. This gentleman is an officer of a marching regiment. The COSSACKS had their own officer besides.

SOROKA is but a small town, pleasantly situated on the west bank of the river, about thirty leagues south-east from CHOTYN, and the same distance north-west from BENDER. The place is inhabited chiefly by MOLDAVIANS, mixed with a few GREEKS, JEWS, and TURKS. It is defended by an old tower, in which are some cannon of little use. The channel of the DNIESTER runs deep there, between two high green banks. The country adjacent is fruitful in grain, and abounds in very rich pasturage.

The 2d, early in the morning, I left TZIKANOFKA, and passed the river, on the ice, to SOROKA; where, the horses being ready, I took leave of the commandant Mr. PETROKY, and proceeded on my journey. Towards noon I halted at a large village called KAYNAR. The preceding summer many of the inhabitants of this place were carried off by the plague; but it was now, by the rigour of the season, much abated. As soon as  
the



the horses were changed, we left KAYNAR; and, after travelling over a very fine country, came, at night, to another large village, called MEYGURA, where we lay. 1738.

The 3d, I left MEYGURA. After passing the river PRUTH, I arrived, in the evening, at YASSY, where I found good and warm quarters.

Next morning, being the 4th, I was conducted to the palace, and waited on the Prince, who is also styled Hospodar of MOLDAVIA. He takes the title of Serene Highness, though he is only promoted to that dignity by the Sultan, or rather by the Grand Visier, and holds it only during pleasure; being trusted with no other power than the administration of civil affairs; his name is GREGORY DUCAS; of a reputable GRECIAN family; he enjoys a general good character. This gentleman treated me with great civility and politeness, regreted that it was not in his power to allow of my going directly to CONSTANTINOPLE; and that I must go to BENDER first, where I should find the Seraskier, who had the chief command in these parts. I was not willing to go so far out of my road; but, as there was no remedy, I complied. The Prince ordered a BOSNIAC captain, and two MOLDAVIAN soldiers of his guards, to escort



1738. me to BENDER; which was all he could do for me in  
the present juncture of affairs.

From SOROKA to YASSY the country is somewhat hilly, the soil rich, the pasturage excellent. About the river PRUTH are fine woods of various sorts of timber natural to the climate. About YASSY, and in other parts, there are large vineyards, producing grapes in great abundance, whereof are made considerable quantities of wine, of inferior quality, the greatest part of which is consumed in POLAND, and other parts adjacent, for which the MOLDAVIANS receive considerable sums in ready money.

The city of YASSY stands in a spacious plain, on the rivulet called BACHLUY, about thirty-five leagues, towards the north-west, from BENDER; it may contain between two and three thousand houses, mostly built of wood. The inhabitants are CHRISTIANS of the GREEK church. The Prince's palace is an ancient pile of GOTHIC building, of stone and brick; it hath the appearance of a venerable old castle, for which, I suppose, it was intended, as this unhappy country hath been, at all times, exposed to the ravages of barbarous nations.

The 5th, having taken leave of my companion,  
Mr.



Mr. NOROFF, who returned back to KIOFF, I fet out 1738. from YASSY, accompanied by my BOSNIAC captain, the two MOLDAVIANS, and my own servant. We came, at night, to a village called VOLTZINITZ, about ten leagues south-east from YASSY, standing in a fruitful valley, where we took up our quarters.

The 6th, we left this village in the morning; and came, at night, to KISHANOFF, another village, where we lodged.

The 7th, we left KISHANOFF. On the road we met with many troops of TARTARS, going to the eastward, on an expedition, notwithstanding the weather was severely cold, with strong frosts. These hardy people accompanied me all the rest of the way to BENDER, where we arrived in the evening.

The country from YASSY to KISHANOFF is very fine; but towards BENDER, it grows more dry and barren, and doth not appear of so good soil, nor to have so good pasturage as the countries which I had passed through.

The MOLDAVIANS are all CHRISTIANS, and the Sultan indulges them with a governor, or prince, of their own religion. This privilege they have enjoyed for many years, which may be esteemed no small favour under such



1738. such an iron-government as is that of the TURKS. Yet it may be observed, that their yoke is much easier, and their manners much more humanized, than at their first entrance and settlement in EUROPE; though I am persuaded that two-thirds of MOLDAVIA lies waste at this time. It seems to have been an established system in TURKISH politics to depopulate all the countries bordering on CHRISTENDOM, reserving no more than may be sufficient to furnish their garrisons and troops with provisions.

As the plague had raged all the preceding year in the town of BENDER, and had almost depopulated the place; about a mile short of the town, we turned off the road, to the right hand, towards the TURKISH camp, where the Seraskier, or general in chief, lay in the field, with all his army about him. The general's quarters were strongly fortified, with a deep ditch palisadoed and mounted with cannon; but the troops were lodged in cells under ground, laid over with sticks and earth, having a hole at the top to let out the smoke, fenced with a dry hedge about it. In this miserable condition these poor people passed the winter. I and my BOSNIAC captain were conducted to one of these holes, which, at night, was crowded with TURKISH officers



ficers of distinction. Such miseries, and many more, <sup>1738.</sup> are the frequent attendants on destructive war. The Seraskier's name is GENGY ALY BASHA, or Young Aly Basha, though he is now about seventy years of age, and hath the character of a brave and active general.

The 8th, the Seraskier sent his secretary to me, who asked me several questions relating to my journey, and hoped that necessity would be admitted as an excuse for the badness of my quarters. In the evening the secretary came again, when he told me, that in two or three days their feast of Bayram would be over, and then I should proceed on my journey to CONSTANTINOPLE, with a proper convoy. In the mean time, he ordered an officer to furnish me with such necessaries as the place afforded. In this no agreeable situation I was obliged to wait till the feast was over, being five long nights, all the while confined within the precincts of my hut. One alleviation was, the company of my BOSNIAC captain, who tarried with me the whole time.

The 12th, in the morning, the secretary came and acquainted me, that the Seraskier had ordered a Chivadar, or officer, belonging to the Grand Visier, and two TARTARS, to escort me to CONSTANTINOPLE; at  
the



1738. the same time he told me that I might depart when I pleased. This welcome news was very agreeable, for I had been little better than a prisoner from the time of my arrival at the camp; though, I must own, they were very civil, and made me as easy as the accommodations, and the circumstances of affairs, would admit of.

I could only see BENDER at a distance. But it is well known to be a place of importance, being strongly and regularly fortified, with out-works in proportion. It stands in a plain, near the river DNIESTER, and is frequently mentioned, in the annals of late times, for being the place of refuge of that intrepid, inconsiderate monarch, CHARLES the Twelfth of SWEDEN, after the RUSSIANS had beat him out of the field at POLTOVA, in the year 1709.

Notwithstanding the contagious distemper was not entirely ceased at BENDER, we had our daily provisions from that place.

As soon as the horses were ready, I mounted, and left this plaguy camp, which is so in a literal, as well as in an allegorical sense. Although our horses were in exceeding bad case, from the fatigues of the last campaign, and from the want of due accommodations,  
of



of shelter, &c. during the severe weather that followed; 1738.  
yet we made a shift to come, in the evening, to a large  
rambling town, called KAUSHAN, inhabited by BUDJACK  
TARTARS. It stands south-west from BENDER. Here I  
had good quarters; the people were friendly and ho-  
spitable. At supper I sat by an old TARTAR, who seem-  
ed to be a person of distinction among them. This old  
gentleman asked me many questions about EUROPE,  
through an interpreter, particularly about the illustri-  
ous family of LORRAIN, which surprised me not a little.  
The first dish that came before us was pilaw made of  
barley; then he told me in FRENCH, that it was not  
dressed after the FRENCH fashion. This brought on  
a conversation between us in that language, which he  
spoke well, in which he informed me, that, in his youth,  
being with the TURKISH army in HUNGARY, he was tak-  
en prisoner by the Duke of LORRAIN, who then com-  
manded the imperial army. His highness took him  
into his service, in which he lived many years; and, af-  
ter treating him with great humanity, at last gave him  
his freedom, with liberty to return into his own coun-  
try; which extraordinary favour he acknowledged with  
great respect and gratitude.

The 13th, having got fresh horses, I left KAUSHAN,



1738. and travelled to the westward, towards the DANUBE, leaving the rising grounds, and came along the plain, called the steppe of BUDJACK, which is flat, dry, barren, and uncultivated; yet there is some good pasture, especially for sheep, of which the TURKISH army have left few remaining. At night, we came to KONGLY, where are about a dozen straggling cottages, inhabited by TARTARS. We made our quarters that night in the corner of a large shed, along with our horses.

The 14th, as there was nothing tempting to detain us at KONGLY, we set forwards, very early in the morning; and proceeded along the same barren plain, without seeing house or tree all that day. In the evening, we came to a TARTAR village, called TARTAR-KEW, where we were tolerably well lodged and entertained.

The 15th, we left TARTAR-KEW; and came, in the evening, to the town of ISMAYL, standing on the north bank of the famous river DANUBE, called DUNAY in these parts. The place is very pleasant, within sight of the BLACK sea. The inhabitants are chiefly TURKS. Here I was well lodged, and had good bread and wine.

The river here is very broad, and divided into several branches, by islands, considerably large; though, when the river falls into the BLACK sea, all the branch-



1738.

es are united, and form but one mouth at its entrance into that sea. The north bank consists of rising grounds; the south is fenced with high hills. I think the DANUBE, at this place, may be compared with the VOLGA at ASTRACHAN, both for breadth and quantity of water. By what I could observe, all the great rivers, from the VOLGA to this place, have, for the most part, high lands for their western banks, and low flat lands to the eastward.

The 16th, we passed the north branch of the DANUBE in a boat, to the next island; but the other branches being fast frozen over, we mounted, and rode and walked by turns, the rest of the way, upon the ice; which was in many places very rough and uneven, with great ridges, consisting of pieces of ice driven together, and heaped upon one another, by strong easterly winds, and the rapidity of the current. Some of the ridges of ice were at least seven or eight feet high; which obliged us to walk on foot most part of the way. However, in the evening, we arrived safely at a town called TULTZIN, standing on the south bank of the river, four leagues from ISMAYL, where we had quarters, and other means of refreshment.

TULTZIN is the first town in the ancient kingdom



1738. of THRACE, now reduced to a TURKISH province, known by the name of BULGARIA. The BULGARIANS, who are CHRISTIANS of the GREEK church, live, for the most part, in villages; the towns, in general, being inhabited by the TURKS. This place hath an old abandoned castle, seemingly of EUROPEAN construction; and, as it stands among hills, on the banks of the river, the situation is very pleasant.

The 17th, we left TULTZIN in the morning; towards noon we arrived at a large town, called BABBADACH, standing in a delightful valley, environed by hills. At some distance, from the top of the hills to the eastward, is a most extensive prospect; particularly a full view of the BLACK SEA.

It is supposed, that the poet OVID was banished and confined to this place; which must have been no agreeable situation, to a man who had passed his young days in the court of AUGUSTUS, and had entered into all the pleasures and amusements of that court, during the time of its politest and gayest period, in the gallantries of which he was supposed to act no inconsiderable part. This amorous Poet's book DE TRISTIBUS exhibits a melancholy picture of the manner of passing his



his latter days, at this place, so different in climate from the happy temperament of that of ITALY. 1738.

After changing horses at this place, we set forwards. At night we came to a village called KAYBALY, at a small distance from which we were so bewildered, in a drift of snow, that we lost the road; and had it not been that the barking of a dog directed us, we must have lain in the fields all night.

The 18th, leaving KAYBALY in deep snow, we proceeded, and came to DANNÄKEW, another village, where we passed the night.

The 19th, we travelled through a very fine country, whereon we found very little snow; and came at night to KABADY, where we lodged.

The 20th, we proceeded, and came to a town called BAZAR-TZICK, and spent the night there. The town is inhabited by TURKS, GREEKS, and BULGARIANS.

The 21st, we came to PROVADY, a pretty large town, inhabited as the former. We stayed there all night.

The 22d, we left PROVADY; came that evening to TZENGY, where we lodged.

The 23d, we continued our route; halted at a caravanfara, four leagues from TZENGY, and after that at a town called AYDOSS; where having changed horses, we proceed-



1738. proceeded on our journey, and slept that night at  
BENGLYR.

The 24th, we came to KANARA, and lay there. I cannot but take notice of this fine country, adorned with many beautiful woods and coppices, a very rich soil, and excellent pasture; but a great deal of it lies waste; and it is but thinly peopled.

The 25th, we came to the town of KIRKGLISS; from thence to that of BURGLASS, where we remained that night.

The 26th, we went on. We lodged that night at TZORLEY.

The 27th, we reached the town of SILIVRY, which stands on the WHITE SEA, or the sea between the DARDANELLS and the port.

The 28th, we passed through a large town, called BUYK-TZECKMIDGY; from thence the last stage to CONSTANTINOPLE.

I must here take notice, that at SILIVRY I was met by another Chevadar, who, instead of conducting me directly to the city, as I expected, turned short to the left hand, out of the high road, carried me through by-paths, over steep and moorish-hills, uninhabited, till at last we came to a little village, on the top of the hill



hill called KARA-MACKLY, where is a neat country-<sup>1738.</sup>  
house belonging to MUSTAPHA-CASSA BASHA, the chief  
butcher to the Sultan, a place of great trust and ho-  
nour.

I was lodged in the Basha's house, and met with a friendly reception from his Kaya, or steward, who furnished me with what necessaries I had occasion for. In the mean time, I waited patiently for the return of a messenger whom they had dispatched to the Basha. This place stands very pleasant and airy, within view of the city, and is a retreat for the Basha, and his family, in times of the plague.

It will be readily imagined, that I did not much like being carried out of the common road. But, without asking questions, I followed my conductors.

The 29th, the messenger returned from the city, with orders that I should proceed, which was very welcome news to me. Accordingly, we set out about ten of the clock. Towards noon, we arrived at CONSTANTINOPLE. They conducted me directly to the house of MUSTAPHA BASHA, who received me with great civility. And, after asking a few questions relating to my journey, he then desired that I would wait till such time as he should acquaint the Visier of my arrival.

MUSTA-



1738. MUSTAPHA BASHA did not return till the evening. Upon his return, he sent an officer with me to SIR EVERARD FAWKENER, the BRITISH ambassador, to whom I was addressed, and in whose house I lodged during my abode at CONSTANTINOPLE.

I shall say nothing relating to the effects of my commission, farther, than that I punctually conformed to the terms of my instructions.

Here it may be observed, that although the RUSSIANS under Count LACY, and under Count MUNICH, were very successful every campaign, from the commencement of the war in 1734, and made great acquisitions on the TURKISH frontier, on that side, by their taking ASOPH and OTZAKOFF; possessing themselves of the PERECOP, and the CRIMEA; and carrying their arms, the last campaign, into MOLDAVIA, which was ended, by a considerable advantage gained by the RUSSIANS, at the battle of CHOTIM; in consequence of which victory, the Basha of CHOTIM brought the keys of that important fortress to the general of the RUSSIAN army, who sent the Basha, and the principal officers under him, prisoners to ST. PETERSBURG; yet the Emperor of GERMANY'S arms, in HUNGARY, were by no means successful; the TURKS gaining on the Emperor's frontier there,



there, as much as they lost of their own frontiers towards RUSSIA. Elated by their successes in HUNGARY, during the last campaign, the OTTOMAN PORTE rose in their demands, and insisted on higher terms than RUSSIA thought proper to agree to. 1738.

This famous city is so well known that I need not enter into a minute description, so shall only give a transient view of such remarkable things as occurred to me, during my short stay at this place.

CONSTANTINOPLE is situated in forty-one and one-half degrees north latitude, twenty-nine degrees east longitude, upon a point of land, on the EUROPEAN shore, in the province of ROMANIA, and is esteemed one of the most delightful situations in the world; for which reason CONSTANTINE the Great chose it for the seat of empire, by whom it was rebuilt and beautified about the year of our Lord 330.

At a distance the city makes a very fine appearance, having a great number of gilded spires, and domes, or cupolas, which multiply as you approach; but, when you enter the city, the general irregularity and narrowness of the streets do in no degree correspond with the magnificent appearance it makes at a distance; which is, indeed, the case of many of the cities and great



1738. towns of EUROPE, seeming to be built at random. I have often thought, that, had a CHINESE been consulted, he could have taught both GREEKS and ROMANS how to lay out towns, and that by the simplest rules; viz. Let there be space enough, sufficient breadth of street, and the houses, on each side, built in a straight line; which rules are observed in all the towns I have seen in CHINA, particularly PEKIN. This common error, in laying out towns in EUROPE, must be owing to the remissness of the government of nations; though this great inconvenience, in so grand a city as CONSTANTINOPLE, hath no relation to the situation of the place, yet it is thought by many, I think very justly, that, were the streets of this city spacious and regular, it would, in some measure, prevent the frequent pestilential diseases with which this place is affected, and which prevail more here than in any other place I know; there seldom passing a year without its making dreadful havock among the populace.

This mortal distemper's being almost always, more or less, in this city, may, in part, be attributed to a defect in TURKISH policy, which suffers all ships to enter the port, without requiring bills of health, at any time; even the ships from infected places are admitted. I



do not know but that the belief of predestination, prevailing so universally among the TURKS, with whom it is a fundamental article of their creed, may likewise contribute to the continuance of the devastations made, by this terrible disease, among the human species. 1738.

A very great nuisance, attending this place, is, its being pestered with a great number of nasty dogs which belong to no body; they kennel in every corner of the streets; it is unlawful to kill them; and they are generally fed, which is looked upon, by many of the TURKS, as an act of charity.

It is, without dispute, a populous city; but far short of the numbers reported by common fame, which seldom keeps within bounds in things of this nature. It is true that many strangers resort hither daily, both from EUROPE and ASIA, and many of them remain here; but then, it must be considered, how many are carried off annually by the pestilence and other diseases. I do not think the whole number exceeds four hundred thousand souls. In walking the streets, you often meet with people, who, to avoid conversing with you, walk on the other side of the street, for fear of catching the distemper; and most people endeavour to get to windward of each other; which, with many o-



1738. ther inconveniencies, renders the place not very agreeable to strangers.

From PERA, a district of CONSTANTINOPLE inhabited by EUROPEANS, and by the foreign ministers residing at the PORTE, there is a fine prospect of the city, and of the Grand Seignor's seraglio; which last stands on an eminence, with sloping gardens, down to the edge of the canal, planted with rows of cypress, and other ever-greens. It hath the appearance of a most delightful place; but, though the walks are well shaded, it is not thought good manners, or even safe, to look at them with a spy-glass.

Opposite to the seraglio, on the ASIAN shore, stands the ancient city of CHRYSOPOLIS, or the Golden City, now called SKUTARY, a pretty little place.

Along the shore of the PROPONTIS, towards the south-west, runs a ridge of very high mountains, called OLYMPUS, which are covered with snow summer and winter. The mountain of that name, mentioned by the poets, stands in GREECE.

February the 3d, there was a great fall of snow, followed by a strong frost, which continued for the space of fourteen days. I thought myself happy in escaping it;



it; but this weather is very acceptable to the people here, as it tends to stop the contagious distemper. 1738.

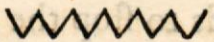
I shall now take a view of some of the most remarkable structures, in and about this ancient city, which are commonly shown to travellers. Indeed there are but few remains of antiquity to be seen at present; for the TURKS, according to their principles, deface and ruin every thing that hath an air of idolatry, as they call it, whether PAGAN or CHRISTIAN. What CHRISTIAN churches they have spared are converted into mosques.

March 2d, the weather being fine, I made a party with some friends to ride out and see the aqueducts, which are curious fabrics erected in order to supply the city with fresh water. They are said to be built by the Emperor VALENS. They are now kept in repair by the Grand Signor. They stand at unequal distances, from four to seven, or more, miles to the northward of the city, according to the respective supplies of water from springs and brooks.

The long aqueduct is about seven hundred yards in length, and near thirty in height; it consists of two stories or ranges of arches, one above the other, having about fifty arches in a range, all of hewn stone, neatly wrought.

The



1738. The crooked aqueduct, so called from its form of zig-zag, runs in this figure ; the intent of which is to divert and lessen the force of the current; and hath a triple range of beautiful arches.

At some distance from this stands the high aqueduct, the most magnificent of all, being near three hundred yards in length, about forty in heighth, having four stately arches, with the same number over them. Besides, there are several others of lesser note, which I need not mention. They are all built to convey the water, over low vallies and hollows, to the city.

At night we came to BELGRADE, a pleasant village, inhabited by GREEKS, where most of the foreign ministers have their country-houses, to which they retire in time of the plague.

The next day we remained at this village, and walked through the woods, to a neighbouring hill, to the eastward, from whence there is a full view of the BLACK sea. These woods are of fine oak, beech, and other timber fit for the construction of a royal navy. They are well furnished with wild fowl, and various sorts of other game.

The 4th, we left BELGRADE, when, riding to the southward, through pleasant woods and fields, we came,  
about



about noon, to a large village, called BUYUCK-TEREY, 1738. standing on the north shore of the canal, or THRACIAN BOSPHORUS. This canal is natural, bursting out from the BLACK sea, between two high mountains, and runs, in a strong current, about sixteen ENGLISH miles, to the city, where it discharges itself into the PROPONTIS. The depth is from ten to fifteen fathoms; the breadth from about one mile to half a mile; very well stored with most sorts of sea-fish, particularly oysters of a small kind, but very delicious. The land, on both sides, is very high, with many pleasant villages along the shore. At the mouth of the canal, where it begins from the BLACK sea, the TURKS have built two forts to defend the passage, one on the shore of ASIA, the other on that of EUROPE; they may well serve to prevent sudden incursions, but of little use against a strong squadron of men of war, and an easterly wind.

I was informed, that, in the reign of Sultan AMURATH, a strong party of COSSACKS came, in open boats, before these castles were built, or when they were neglected, entered the canal, and put all the city in great consternation. After they had plundered many villages they returned again to their own country, with little or no loss.

From



1738. From BUYUCK-TEREY we sent our horses home, and returned to the city by water.

Some days after this I went to see the Sultan, as he came from his devotions at the mosque called JENEY-JAMEY. He was on horseback, attended by a small troop of spahis on horseback, and some janizaries on foot. MAHMUTH hath a good aspect, and bears the character of being of a humane, peaceable disposition. This Prince succeeded ACHMET, who was deposed, about seven years before, by one named ALI-PATRONE, a janizary, and his associates, all people of low degree; the next in command to ALI-PATRONE, OR KALYLL as he is commonly called, was MUSS-LUCH, a dealer in melons and other fruits; the third was EMY-ALY. These three chiefs governed the TURKISH empire near a month. After they had placed MAHMUTH on the throne, they deposed the Grand Visier, and disposed of all offices, civil and military, at pleasure. ALI-PATRONE, in the mean time, was very sober, never changing his habit, came every morning to the janizaries hall, where he sat as sovereign judge, and gave sentence on all causes, that were brought before him, without delay; was very charitable to the poor, and rectified many abuses in the state. That magnificent Visier, IBRAHIM-BASHA,



BASHA, who had introduced printing, fell a sacrifice to the rebels. 1738.

One action of KALYLL's I cannot omit relating, as it evinces, that his high station did not produce forgetfulness of his old friends. There was one JANAKY a GREEK, a butcher by trade, who had formerly lent ALI-PATRONE half a dollar. He sent for this butcher, and made him Hospodar or prince of MOLDAVIA. Poor JANAKY would willingly have been excused from accepting so high an office. But his patron insisted on his taking it.

However, these mighty chiefs being intoxicated with power, began to intoxicate themselves with wine also; and they were at length caught in a snare, laid for them by SULTAN GERAY, Chan of the CRIM TARTARS, who had been sent for, by some of the grandees, for that end. SULTAN GERAY succeeded so well, that the chiefs were cut off, the rest dispersed, and the government re-established on the same footing as heretofore, with very little bloodshed; the particulars of which being, in general, well known, I say no more of that affair.

The next place I was carried to was the mint, where



1738. I saw them coining money of different sorts. It stands  
in the outer-court of the seraglio.

From thence I went to the famous church of SANG-TA SOPHIA, now converted into a mosque. There being already many descriptions extant, of this ancient fabrick, I shall only observe, that it was rebuilt, and adorned, by the Emperor JUSTINIAN, about the year of OUR LORD 500. It is highly esteemed by architects, for the flatness of the dome, or cupola, which, it is said, the moderns cannot imitate.

In time of war, CHRISTIANS are not permitted to enter the mosque. Nevertheless, we were conducted up a pair of back-stairs to the gallery, from whence we had a full view of the whole. The floor is laid with clean mats and carpets, having no seat, only one pulpit for the Mullah. The gallery is laid with marble, supported by about one hundred marble pillars, of various colours and sizes, most of them, at least, between five and six feet diameter. The whole of the inside hath a noble and grand appearance. At the entry into the gallery, is an old vestry, with the door closed up; of which a GREEK, of my acquaintance, told me the following short story, viz. A certain Mullah being in the vestry, saw, or fancied that he saw, a man on horseback,  
with



with a sword in his hand, who bid him begone out of that holy place, &c. This, like other tales of the same nature, was not long a secret; and was interpreted to have been no other than CONSTANTINE the Great. However fabulous the story appears, the door of the vestry hath been condemned since that time. 1738.

From SANCTA SOPHIA I was conducted to the Hippodrome, where the GREEKS used formerly to train their horses to the menage, now called the ATT-MAY-DAN; and is still applied to the same use by the TURKS. It is a spacious oblong square, having a pretty marble obelisk in the middle. On one side of it is a pillar of brass, with serpents twining round it; this is somewhat defaced, and is about ten foot high.

In the great street, at some distance from the Hippodrome, stands another venerable monument of antiquity; a large and tall pillar, called the Burnt-pillar, because it hath greatly suffered by a fire in the neighbourhood, which hath cracked it in diverse places; this is a misfortune common to narrow streets, and not to be remedied without a well regulated police. This pillar is of porphyry, about twenty yards high.

We went thence to see the grand reservoir, built with intent of supplying the city with water in case of



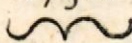
1738. a siege. This must have cost an immense sum of money; for it is all of it under ground; above it are streets and houses. It is not far from the Hippodrome. Towards the water side, the covering of it is supported by a great number of arches, and many hundreds of stone pillars, of which not a few are fallen down, and the whole of it is going a-pace to decay. There was no water in it.

There is another ancient fabrick, known by the name of EDIKULY, or seven towers, standing on an eminence to the westward; which is now a common prison. Near the middle of the city stands a small tower, called BELISARIUS; whether or not it was the house of that great and unfortunate general I could not learn.

Opposite to the seraglio, near the middle of the canal, stands a small round tower, upon the summit of a small rock, called LEANDER'S TOWER. This, with the foregoing, are the few remains of antiquity commonly shown to strangers.

The haven, which divides the city from that district of it called PERA, for its extent and depth of water, may probably equal, perhaps surpass, the best in the known world, well fenced on all sides by rising grounds. Near the bottom of the haven, is a spacious and most  
conveni-



convenient yard for building ships and galleys, with 1738.   
suitable magazines and ware-houses for keeping the  
cordage, guns, ammunition, and for every material re-  
quisite for building and fitting men of war and galleys  
for the sea.

Adjoining is a place called the bagnio, appropriated  
to the lodging and accommodating galley-slaves; where,  
it may be supposed, they do not pass their time very  
agreeably.

My next walk was to see the Dervises at worship;  
they are a religious order of the MAHOMETANS who  
have a mosque in PERA, built in a circular form, with  
a pulpit for the Mullah, and a gallery built in a nich,  
made in the circle, for the musick. The sermon be-  
ing ended, the musicians began on various instruments,  
which were like the EUROPEAN flutes and hautboys, up-  
on which five of the Dervises stood up, and danced  
round the mosque, in a frantick manner, turning them-  
selves round, as they advanced, with so quick a motion,  
that their faces were hardly distinguishable from other  
parts of their heads. They followed each other at cer-  
tain distances; but an old man, of fourscore years, out-  
did all the rest in quickness of turning round. Yet,  
when he left off, he did not seem to be at all discom-  
posed



1738. posed by the violence of the motion. This extravagant sect make vows of poverty and chastity, travel over all the east, where the religion of MAHOMET prevails, and are held in great esteem, by the devout of that profession.

The 9th of March, the army intended for HUNGARY, under the command of EGGYNY-MAHOMET-BASHA, the Grand Visier, began to file off to the camp assigned for them, about three miles to the northward of the city. The procession continued four days; and, as usual, when the Sultan himself, or the Grand Visier, take the field in person, the troops are attended by all the different trades and artisans to the place of encampment, each trade having the proper dress and badges of their respective profession, with banners, musick, &c.

The first day, the janizaries marched, with their Aga, or chief commander, at their head, followed by a numerous multitude of artisans. The first, in procession, was a plough drawn by painted oxen, with gilded horns. It would be tedious to mention the rest particularly; I shall only observe, that some of this ragamuffian crew made frightful figures, being naked to the waste, with sabres run through the fleshy part of  
their



their arms, and besmeared with blood; a shocking spectacle!

1738.



The second day's procession, was the pioniers and miners, with their different tools and utensils.

The third day, the cannoniers marched.

The fourth day, the Visier marched out, attended by the general officers of the army, a great many Spahis and Janizaries, and all the different trades of the town; among which rabble, were many such banditti as above described, naked for the most part of the body, all bloody. The Grand Mufti was in the same coach with the Grand Visier, and had the ALCORAN carried by a Mullah, who sat likewise in the same coach, opposite to the Mufti; which was preceded by a number of singers, in their proper habits, singing as they went along. Before the coach, was carried the standard of MAHOMET, which is a horse's tail, said to be brought from heaven by the angel GABRIEL to MAHOMET; and is held in great veneration, seldom appearing but on great solemnities; after which it is carried back to the seraglio, where it remains till the next occasion.

When war is declared against any prince or state, the horse-tail is set up at the gate of the seraglio, called ALLA-CAPY, or the PORT of GOD, from whence the

Grand



1738. Grand Seignor dates all his dispatches; and, on that account, the court of the Grand Seignor is commonly called the OTTOMAN PORTE, and the SUBLIME PORTE. But when the Sultan is in the field, at the head of his army, he dates all his letters and orders from his stirrup. All generals who have three horse-tails, are called Visier; but the Grand Visier, who is always prime minister, governs and directs all affairs relating to the state, both foreign and domestick; next to him, in power, is the Kaymacan, who is his lieutenant; after him Nisangy Bascha, keeper of the seals; then Kap-adgee Bascha, chief porter; Kissar-agassy, the chief eunuch; these are the principal great officers at court. It happens often, that the Kissar-agassy hath more to say than all the rest put together; for although the ladies live very retired, yet they are not so ignorant as is generally imagined. And, if I am not misinformed, matters of the greatest consequence are canvassed, and often settled in the seraglio, before they are presented to the ministry. One thing is certain, that whoever wants a favour at court needs no better recommendation than a friend among the ladies.

Soon after my arrival, I had an invitation from the famous Count BONNEVAL, who then was ill of the  
gout



gout; but, in time of war, it was not thought fit that I should visit that gentleman. 1738.

March 15th, Sir EVERARD FAWKENER went to the camp to take leave of the Grand Visier, as is usual for all the foreign ministers to do, on the like occasions. We dismounted at some distance from the tent of this great man, were conducted, by an officer, to a magnificent tent, near to that of the Visier, and entertained with coffee, &c. for about a quarter of an hour; after which the ambassador, accompanied by the gentlemen of his retinue, went to the Visier's tent, where a stool was prepared for his excellency; the gentlemen stood during the time the ambassador remained. The Visier sat, cross-legged, on a sofa raised about half a foot from the floor, which was all laid with rich carpets. Very near him stood a frame, on which were hung some muskets, sabres, &c. of very curious workmanship, ornamented richly with gold, silver, and stones of value, as emeralds, rubies, &c. The TURKISH camps are, in general, very regular and clean.

The short ceremony being over, we returned again to the city. After some days the Grand Visier marched to ADRIANOPLE, in his way to HUNGARY.

Being about to leave this city, I shall detain the



1738. reader with no more particulars than the following short observations.

In TURKEY there are few families who have any distinguishing titles or honours, appertaining to them, which descend to their children. All titles of honour, and places of power and profit, in the Sultan's dominions, depend on personal merit, or the Sultan's favour, which dies with the possessor. The only two families, who have a just claim to nobility, are those of DGIGGAL-UGLU and KUPERLY; who, for signal services done to the empire, have peculiar privileges; one, in particular, that the Sultan, as it is said, cannot condemn them to death. It seems, that, on a very critical conjuncture, when affairs were in great disorder, the Sultan died, KUPERLY kept it a secret for six weeks; in which time, by his prudent conduct, the government was established on a proper footing. Besides these, there are descendents of their prophet MAHOMET's family, of which there are great numbers, who are distinguished by wearing green, and enjoy some privileges.

Having nothing more to do at CONSTANTINOPLE, I am now about to return to ST. PETERSBURG. As I had a commission from Sir EVERARD FAWKENER for the

Grand



Grand Visier, who was then at ADRIANOPLE, I took that road. 1738.

April 8th, after taking leave of my friends, I set out from CONSTANTINOPLE, accompanied by a tzaush, or messenger, a janizary, and my own servant.

The 13th, in the morning, I came to the city of ADRIANOPLE, where I lodged, at the house of Mr. DAMIRAL, a GREEK gentleman, who is agent at this place for our ambassador, where I found a friendly reception.

The city of ADRIANOPLE is about forty leagues north-west from CONSTANTINOPLE, in a pleasant country, inhabited by TURKS, GREEKS, and some JEWS. The Capuchins have also a convent here. The town is pretty large; and is remarkable for having a very noble grand mosque, with very high minarets, of excellent workmanship. The architect was a GREEK, of whom it is reported, that the Grand Seigneur, being amazed at the extraordinary contrivance and execution which the architect exhibited in those buildings, thought that nothing of mechanism was out of his reach, and ordered him to make himself wings, and to fly off from the top of one of the minarets; which the poor builder was forced to attempt; after flying a con-



1738. siderable distance, he fell among some tombs, and broke his neck. I do not vouch for the truth of the story; but I was shown the tombs, in the neighbourhood, among which it is said that he fell.

The 14th, I had a visit from Monsieur PEISONELL, the FRENCH agent, and some of the Capuchin Fathers.

The 15th, I went to return the visit at the convent. In coming through the market-place, in the way to my lodgings, I met with a very disagreeable spectacle; which was two men, lying stark naked, without their heads, which had been just before cut off. They were said to have been spies.

After discharging my commission to the Grand Vifier, which I effected through Mr. DAMIRAL, and obtaining an order for post-horses, I left ADRIANOPLE the 17th, and proceeded on my journey to the northward; in which I need not be particular, having mentioned most of the places in the former part of this relation. I took the nearest way for YASSY in MOLDAVIA.

The 26th, we passed the DANUBE, in a boat, at a place called KALASS, a few leagues above ISMAYL.

The 29th, we arrived at the city of YASSY. The next day I waited on the Prince, who received me in a most



most friendly manner. He gave orders for horses, and two of his guards, to conduct me to the frontiers of POLAND. He likewise sent an officer to accompany me as far as NEMIROFF. I then discharged my tzaush and janizary, who returned back to CONSTANTINOPLE. 1738.

May 1st, I left YASSY; and came, the next day, to SOROKA.

The 3d, I left SOROKA, passed the DNIESTER, and came to TAMAS-POLY, where I lodged.

The 5th, I got to NEMIROFF, and at this place delivered all my dispatches for EUROPE to General RUS-SOTSKY, to be forwarded according to address.

The 10th, I arrived at KIOFF; and set out again the same day.

On the 17th of May I arrived at ST. PETERSBURG.  
It is to be noted, all my dates are old stile.

I shall



I shall subjoin a list of all the stages and distances from ST. PETERSBURG to CONSTANTINOPLE. As I have, in a former journey, particularized the stages to MOSCO, I need not repeat them here.

|                                          | Versts. |
|------------------------------------------|---------|
| From St. Petersburg to the city of Mosco | 734     |
| From Mosco, towards Kioff,               |         |
| to Sela Packra                           | 30      |
| the village of Tzeniskoy                 | 35      |
| Lykof-Vrague                             | 40      |
| Dobrichach                               | 35      |
| Town of Caluga                           | 40      |
| Town of Lykvyn                           | 30      |
| Town of Belof                            | 40      |
| Town of Bollhof                          | 40      |
| Selo Glotovo                             | 35      |
| Town of Kartzof                          | 35      |
| Selo Samova                              | 30      |
| Selo Tzaianka                            | 30      |
| Village of Lieubush                      | 30      |
| Town of Seyefski                         | 30      |
| Tolsto Dubovo                            | 40      |
| To be carried over                       | 1254    |



|                              | Versts. |
|------------------------------|---------|
| Brought over                 | 1254    |
| From Town of Gluchovo        | 30      |
| to Town of Korolevitz        | 39      |
| Town of Batturin             | 44      |
| Borzna                       | 33      |
| Neshina                      | 48      |
| Nosofka                      | 28      |
| Koffelitz                    | 38      |
| Semipologue                  | 25      |
| Brovary                      | 29      |
| City of Kioff                | 18      |
| From St. Petersburg to Kioff | 1586    |

The verst in Russia consists of  $1166\frac{2}{3}$  English yards;  
 so that the distance from St. Petersburg to Kioff,  
 being 1586 versts, is  $1051\frac{3}{10}$  English miles.

From Kioff to Soroka.

| Polish miles.       | Polish miles.         |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| From Kioff          | Brought up 14         |
| to Vassilkoff 5     | From Samgorod 1       |
| Belozyrkoff 6       | to Golochuast 1       |
| Shamarayofka 2      | Pogrebisha 2          |
| Squeer 1            | Spitzinitz 2          |
| To be carried up 14 | To be carried over 20 |



|                                        |          |                            |            |
|----------------------------------------|----------|----------------------------|------------|
| Polish miles.                          |          | From Soroka the frontier,  |            |
| Brought over 20                        |          | to Yassy the capital of    |            |
| From Otzeredno                         | 1        | Moldavia, reckoning the    |            |
| to Lipovitz                            | 1        | Turkish sahat, or hour, to |            |
| Vytopsky                               | 2        | be three English miles.    |            |
| Kavalefka                              | 1        | English miles.             |            |
| Nemiroff                               | 1        | From Soroka                |            |
| Petzery                                | 2        | to Kaynar                  | 1 2        |
| Spykoff                                | 2        | Hetsh                      | 1 2        |
| Lefkovitz                              | 1        | Meygura                    | 2 4        |
| Tamaz-Poly                             | 3        | River Pruth                | 1 2        |
| Kleynboska                             | 2        | City of Yassy              | 1 2        |
| Tzikhanofka on                         |          | From Soroka to Yassy 7 2   |            |
| the Dniester, on                       |          |                            |            |
| the bank oppo-                         |          | From Yassy to Bender.      |            |
| site is Soroka                         | <u>3</u> | English miles.             |            |
|                                        | 39       | From Yassy                 |            |
| Computing $6\frac{1}{2}$ English miles |          | to Rosinar                 | 1 2        |
| to a Polish mile, the di-              |          | Voltzinitz                 | 1 5        |
| stance from Kioff to Soro-             |          | Koshushna                  | 2 4        |
| ka will be $253\frac{1}{2}$ English    |          | Kishanoff                  | 6          |
| miles.                                 |          | Bender                     | <u>2 4</u> |
|                                        |          | From Yassy to Bender 8 1   |            |
|                                        |          | From                       |            |



|                           |                        |     |
|---------------------------|------------------------|-----|
| From Bender to the Da-    | English miles.         |     |
| nube along the desert of  | Brought up             | 78  |
| Budjack.                  | From Kabady            | 12  |
|                           | to Aly-Beg-Kiew        | 12  |
| From Bender               | Bazartzick             | 24  |
| to Kaufhan                | Usheny                 | 6   |
| Kongley                   | Provady                | 24  |
| Tartarken                 | Yeny-Kiew              | 9   |
| Town of Ismayl            | Tzenggy                | 6   |
| From Bender to Ismayl     | A Caravanfera          | 12  |
|                           | Aydofs                 | 12  |
| From Ismayl to Constanti- | Benglyr                | 9   |
| nople.                    | Kara-Bunar             | 15  |
|                           | Faky                   | 12  |
| English miles.            | Kangry                 | 12  |
| From Ismayl, cross the    | Kirglifs               | 24  |
| Danube,                   | Bourgafs               | 24  |
| to Tultzin                | Tzorby                 | 30  |
| Babbadach                 | Silivry                | 24  |
| Kaybaly                   | Buyuck Tzeck-          |     |
| Kodjalo                   | miday                  | 18  |
| Istere                    | Constantinople         | 18  |
| Danna-Kew                 |                        |     |
| Kara-Su                   | From Ism. to Constant. | 381 |
| To be carried up          |                        | 78  |



The whole distance from St. Petersburg to Constantinople, I take to be about 1925 English measured miles, of 1760 yards each mile.

The several distances as follow, viz.

From St. Petersburg to Kioff 1051 measured miles.

From Kioff to Soroka, the fron-

tier of Moldavia, - - - 253 computed miles.

From Soroka to Yaffy - - - 72 Do.

From Yaffy to Bender - - - 81 Do.

From Bender to Ismayl - - - 87 Do.

From Ismayl to Constantinople 381 Do.

---

1925

Thus I have finished my fourth eastern journey, which, in all probability, will be my last to that quarter of the globe. I would not advise any man to undertake this last, at such a season of the year as I did, or in time of war.

F I N I S.



# ALTERATIONS BY THE AUTHOR.

| VOL. I. |       |                         | Page. | Line. | Read.                                  |
|---------|-------|-------------------------|-------|-------|----------------------------------------|
| Page.   | Line. | Read.                   |       |       |                                        |
| 12      | 13    | seven weeks.            | 392   | 20    | four or five hundred thousand roubles. |
| 14      | 7     | September 21st.         | 338   | 11    | ivory-sticks.                          |
| 16      | 2     | CHERCASKY.              |       |       |                                        |
| 18      | 11    | November.               |       |       |                                        |
| 168     | 22    | KATHERINA-BURG.         | 46    | 12    | near the seventieth.                   |
| 220     | 21    | Maflanitza.             | 129   | 18    | <i>dele</i> ly in quickly.             |
| 251     | 2     | fheds.                  | 149   | 13    | IRKUTSKY.                              |
| ib.     | 11    | for raifins r. almonds. | 166   |       | 2d col. l. 7. read 3119.               |
| 299     | 16    | URGA.                   | 332   | ult.  | could.                                 |

## VOL. II.



























